



Upgrading to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010

Microsoft Corporation

Published: January 2011

Author: Microsoft Office System and Servers Team (itspdocs@microsoft.com)

Abstract

This book is designed to guide administrators and IT professionals through the process of upgrading to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007.

The content in this book is a copy of selected content in the [SharePoint Server 2010 technical library](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=181463) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=181463>) as of the publication date. For the most current content, see the technical library on the Web.

Microsoft®

This document is provided “as-is”. Information and views expressed in this document, including URL and other Internet Web site references, may change without notice. You bear the risk of using it.

Some examples depicted herein are provided for illustration only and are fictitious. No real association or connection is intended or should be inferred.

This document does not provide you with any legal rights to any intellectual property in any Microsoft product. You may copy and use this document for your internal, reference purposes.

© 2011 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

Microsoft, Access, Active Directory, Backstage, Excel, Groove, Hotmail, InfoPath, Internet Explorer, Outlook, PerformancePoint, PowerPoint, SharePoint, Silverlight, Windows, Windows Live, Windows Mobile, Windows PowerShell, Windows Server, and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

The information contained in this document represents the current view of Microsoft Corporation on the issues discussed as of the date of publication. Because Microsoft must respond to changing market conditions, it should not be interpreted to be a commitment on the part of Microsoft, and Microsoft cannot guarantee the accuracy of any information presented after the date of publication.

Contents

| | |
|---|----|
| Getting help | xi |
| Upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010 | 1 |
| About the upgrade process (SharePoint Server 2010) | 3 |
| What's new in upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 4 |
| Upgrade requirements | 4 |
| Hardware requirement: 64-bit | 4 |
| Operating system requirement: Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 | 5 |
| Database requirement: 64-bit SQL Server 2005 SP3 or SQL Server 2008 SP1 | 6 |
| Pre-upgrade checker | 6 |
| Windows PowerShell command to check databases before attaching | 7 |
| Visual Upgrade | 7 |
| Feature Upgrade | 7 |
| New options for reducing downtime during upgrade | 8 |
| Changes in key features between versions | 8 |
| Upgrade process overview (SharePoint Server 2010) | 12 |
| In-place upgrade | 12 |
| Database attach upgrade | 14 |
| Hybrid approach 1: Read-only databases | 15 |
| Hybrid approach 2: Detach databases | 17 |
| How upgrade affects search features (SharePoint Server 2010) | 21 |
| How upgrade affects search system architecture (SharePoint Server 2010) | 22 |
| How upgrade affects Search Center sites (SharePoint Server 2010) | 26 |
| Server administrator options for upgrading sites during product upgrade | 26 |
| Site owner options for upgrading sites after product upgrade | 27 |
| How other services are affected by upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 29 |
| Updated services infrastructure for SharePoint Server 2010 | 29 |
| In-place upgrade with services | 30 |
| Before in-place upgrade | 31 |
| During in-place upgrade | 31 |
| After in-place upgrade | 36 |
| Database attach upgrade with services | 36 |
| Before database attach upgrade | 36 |
| During database attach upgrade | 37 |

| | |
|---|----|
| After database attach upgrade | 37 |
| Considerations for specific services..... | 38 |
| User profiles..... | 38 |
| My Site Web sites | 39 |
| Office SharePoint Server Search | 39 |
| Windows SharePoint Services Search | 40 |
| InfoPath Forms Services | 40 |
| Excel Services | 40 |
| Business Data Catalog | 41 |
| Single sign-on | 41 |
| About upgrading farms that share services (parent and child farms) (SharePoint Server 2010) | 42 |
| About upgrading parent and child farms | 42 |
| Considerations for upgrading parent and child farms | 43 |
| Process overview: Upgrading a duplicate parent farm | 43 |
| Process overview: Upgrading by using a temporary parent farm | 48 |
| Plan and prepare for upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 53 |
| Determine upgrade approach (SharePoint Server 2010) | 55 |
| Choose an upgrade approach..... | 55 |
| Special cases | 58 |
| Review upgrade best practices (SharePoint Server 2010) | 62 |
| Review supported and unsupported upgrade paths (SharePoint Server 2010) | 65 |
| Review supported topologies for upgrade | 65 |
| Physical topology guidance | 65 |
| Supported topologies..... | 66 |
| Migrating from a stand-alone server to a server farm | 66 |
| Migrating from 32-bit hardware..... | 66 |
| Supported editions for upgrade..... | 66 |
| Supported cross-product upgrades..... | 67 |
| Review system requirements for upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 68 |
| About these requirements | 68 |
| Determine how to handle customizations (SharePoint Server 2010) | 70 |
| Identify customizations in your environment | 70 |
| Evaluate the customizations | 70 |
| Considerations for specific customizations | 71 |
| Ensure that future customizations follow best practices | 73 |
| Create a communication plan (SharePoint Server 2010) | 75 |
| Who is on the upgrade team? | 75 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| When and what to communicate to the upgrade team | 76 |
| When and what to communicate to site users | 77 |
| Plan to upgrade to Business Connectivity Services (SharePoint Server 2010) | 78 |
| The Business Data Catalog, Application Registry, and Business Data Connectivity service | 78 |
| How Business Connectivity Services upgrade works | 79 |
| Upgrading by using database attach..... | 81 |
| Solution-specific upgrade considerations | 81 |
| Models | 81 |
| Web Parts | 82 |
| Search..... | 82 |
| Single sign-on | 83 |
| Maintaining service databases on separate servers | 83 |
| Maintaining parent and child farm relationships | 83 |
| Plan to upgrade form templates during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010..... | 85 |
| About upgrading forms during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010..... | 85 |
| Upgrade form templates during a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010..... | 86 |
| Export and import administrator-approved form template files between configuration databases | 87 |
| Update form template links to the server..... | 87 |
| Upgrade form templates during an in-place upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010..... | 88 |
| Plan visual upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)..... | 89 |
| Key planning phase of visual upgrade | 89 |
| Preserving the existing user interface | 89 |
| Upgrading to the new user interface..... | 90 |
| Training site collection owners and site owners..... | 90 |
| Known issues | 91 |
| Testing and troubleshooting upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 92 |
| Best practices for testing upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 94 |
| Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues (SharePoint Server 2010) | 96 |
| Set up a test environment | 97 |
| Using a virtual test environment | 97 |
| Using a physical test environment..... | 98 |
| Additional test environments for database attach upgrade | 99 |
| Identify and install customizations..... | 99 |
| Copy real data to the test environment and try the upgrade..... | 100 |
| Try in-place upgrade..... | 101 |
| Try a database attach upgrade..... | 101 |
| Review your results | 102 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Review the log files | 102 |
| Restart upgrade, if necessary | 103 |
| Review upgraded sites | 103 |
| Adjust your plans and test again | 103 |
| Estimate how long the upgrade process will take and the space that you need (SharePoint Server 2010) | 104 |
| Estimate the space that you need for the upgrade | 104 |
| Estimate how long the upgrade will take | 105 |
| Cleaning up your environment before upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 109 |
| Items to clean up | 109 |
| Delete unused or underused site collections and subwebs | 109 |
| Address large lists | 109 |
| Address large numbers of site collections in a content database | 110 |
| Address large ACLs | 110 |
| Remove extraneous document versions | 110 |
| Remove unused templates, features, and Web Parts | 110 |
| Repair data issues | 111 |
| Making structural changes | 112 |
| Troubleshoot upgrade issues (SharePoint Server 2010) | 113 |
| General principles for identifying issues | 113 |
| First, check upgrade status and log files | 113 |
| Then, address issues in order | 114 |
| Common issues | 114 |
| Missing or deprecated server-side files or customizations | 115 |
| Incorrectly configured or missing settings for server farm, Web application, or services | 115 |
| Inconsistent or incorrect update levels | 116 |
| Missing global navigation for blogs | 116 |
| Data issues | 116 |
| UI changes | 117 |
| Lack of space | 117 |
| Forms-based authentication | 117 |
| Security and permissions | 117 |
| .Stp files are not working after upgrade | 118 |
| Cannot find new versions of the Fabulous 40 application templates | 118 |
| Upgrading data from SharePoint Portal Server 2003: pre-upgrade checker reports corrupted databases | 119 |
| Recovering after a failed upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 120 |
| Recovering when you have read-only databases in a standby environment (database attach upgrade) | 120 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Recovering when you have a full environment backup (in-place upgrade) | 120 |
| Recovering when you have database backups (in-place upgrade) | 121 |
| Resume upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)..... | 122 |
| Restart upgrade for a server farm by using Psconfig.exe | 122 |
| Restart upgrade for a database by using Windows PowerShell | 123 |
| Perform pre-upgrade steps (SharePoint Server 2010) | 124 |
| Run the pre-upgrade checker (SharePoint Server 2010) | 125 |
| About the pre-upgrade checker report | 125 |
| Run the pre-upgrade checker | 127 |
| Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 128 |
| Back up the environment | 128 |
| Test the backups | 128 |
| Perform an in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 129 |
| Checklist for in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 130 |
| Prepare for upgrade | 130 |
| Perform the upgrade | 131 |
| Perform post-upgrade steps..... | 134 |
| Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010 | 137 |
| Process overview | 138 |
| Before you begin | 139 |
| Install prerequisites | 139 |
| Run Setup on all servers | 140 |
| Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard | 140 |
| Check upgrade status for sites..... | 143 |
| Verification..... | 143 |
| Additional steps | 143 |
| Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases (SharePoint Server 2010) | 144 |
| Process overview | 145 |
| Before you begin | 145 |
| To detach databases and upgrade them in parallel on the same farm..... | 146 |
| To detach databases and upgrade them in parallel on a temporary small farm..... | 147 |
| Verification..... | 148 |
| Additional steps | 148 |
| Install available language template packs (SharePoint Server 2010) | 149 |
| About installing language packs and upgrading sites | 149 |
| About changing languages..... | 149 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Moving from a fully localized product to a language pack | 150 |
| Changing languages to a new language pack | 150 |
| Perform a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010 | 152 |
| Checklist for database attach upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 153 |
| Prepare for upgrade | 153 |
| Perform the upgrade | 155 |
| Perform post-upgrade steps..... | 160 |
| Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade | 162 |
| Before you begin | 162 |
| Create and configure the new environment | 163 |
| Install..... | 163 |
| Configure service applications..... | 164 |
| Configure general farm settings | 165 |
| Create and configure Web applications..... | 166 |
| Reapply customizations | 167 |
| Verify the new environment..... | 168 |
| Perform the upgrade | 168 |
| Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010 | 169 |
| Process overview | 170 |
| Before you begin | 170 |
| Set the previous version databases to be read-only (database attach with read-only databases) | 171 |
| Back up the previous version databases by using SQL Server tools | 172 |
| Detach the previous version databases (standard database attach)..... | 174 |
| Restore a backup copy of the database (database attach with read-only databases) | 176 |
| Verify custom components | 177 |
| Attach a content database to a Web application..... | 178 |
| Verification: Verify upgrade for the first database | 180 |
| Upgrade the shared services database | 181 |
| Upgrade My Site Web sites..... | 184 |
| Attach the remaining databases..... | 185 |
| Verification: Verify upgrade for additional databases..... | 185 |
| Additional steps | 185 |
| Perform post-upgrade steps (SharePoint Server 2010)..... | 186 |
| Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 187 |
| Configure new and upgraded services after in-place upgrade | 187 |
| Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for Profile Services | 187 |
| Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service | 190 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Upgrading solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog | 192 |
| Have users migrate private My Links to private tags (Optional) | 192 |
| Perform post-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) | 194 |
| Reapply administrator permissions for services | 194 |
| Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for Profile Services | 194 |
| Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service | 197 |
| Upgrading solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog | 199 |
| Update links that are used in any upgraded InfoPath form templates | 199 |
| Have users migrate private My Links to private tags (Optional) | 200 |
| Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application (SharePoint Server 2010) | 201 |
| Configure a forms-based Web application to use an LDAP provider by using Central Administration | 201 |
| Configure the LDAP Web.Config files | 202 |
| Configure a forms-based Web application to use an LDAP provider by using Windows PowerShell | 206 |
| Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites (SharePoint Server 2010)..... | 208 |
| Verify upgrade status | 208 |
| Review the log files | 208 |
| Verify the version number..... | 210 |
| Check upgrade status for sites | 210 |
| Validate the upgraded environment | 211 |
| Review upgraded sites | 212 |
| Web Parts | 212 |
| Large lists | 214 |
| Styles and appearance | 214 |
| Permissions | 215 |
| Customized (unghosted) pages..... | 215 |
| Manage visual upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)..... | 217 |
| About using Visual Upgrade..... | 217 |
| View status of current user interface..... | 217 |
| Revert sites to previous user interface..... | 218 |
| Force an upgrade to the new user interface | 219 |
| Site owner options for visual upgrade | 220 |
| Upgrade from other versions or other products | 221 |
| Upgrading from SharePoint Portal Server 2003 to SharePoint Server 2010..... | 222 |
| Process overview | 222 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Upgrade sequence | 223 |
| Before you begin | 225 |
| Review required permissions | 225 |
| Review required hardware and software | 226 |
| Prepare to upgrade | 226 |
| Prepare your farms..... | 227 |
| Perform the first upgrade | 228 |
| Verify the first upgrade | 229 |
| Perform the second upgrade..... | 229 |
| Verify the second upgrade | 230 |
| | |
| Upgrade from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010..... | 231 |
| Before you begin | 231 |
| Upgrade in place from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010 | 232 |
| Attach databases and upgrade from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010 | 235 |
| Enable new features on existing sites and subsites | 236 |
| | |
| Upgrade from a SharePoint Server 2010 Standard CAL to an Enterprise CAL | 239 |
| Process overview | 239 |
| View the list of features that are included in each license type | 239 |
| Enable Enterprise features on existing sites | 240 |
| Verification..... | 241 |
| | |
| Upgrade from a trial version of SharePoint Server 2010 | 243 |
| Process overview | 243 |
| Upgrade from a trial version of SharePoint Server 2010 | 243 |
| | |
| Using AAM URL redirection as part of the upgrade process (SharePoint Server 2010) (white paper) | 245 |
| | |
| Migrate from forms-based authentication to claims-based authentication (SharePoint Server 2010) | 246 |
| Convert SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications that use forms-based authentication to use claims-based authentication | 246 |
| Migrate users and permissions from SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010..... | 247 |
| | |
| Migrate from classic-mode to claims-based authentication (SharePoint Server 2010) | 248 |
| Convert SharePoint Server 2010 Web applications that use classic-mode authentication to use claims-based authentication | 248 |
| Additional migration guidelines | 249 |

Getting help

Every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of this book. This content is also available online in the Office System TechNet Library, so if you run into problems you can check for updates at:

<http://technet.microsoft.com/office>

If you do not find your answer in our online content, you can send an e-mail message to the Microsoft Office System and Servers content team at:

itspdocs@microsoft.com

If your question is about Microsoft Office products, and not about the content of this book, please search the Microsoft Help and Support Center or the Microsoft Knowledge Base at:

<http://support.microsoft.com>

Upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010

Welcome to the upgrade guide for Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. The articles in this guide help you plan for and perform an upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010.

For a graphical overview of the upgrade process, and information about how to plan and test upgrade, see the following upgrade models:

- [Upgrade planning](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178376) (*http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178376*)
- [Upgrade approaches](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178377) (*http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178377*)
- [Upgrade services](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178379) (*http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178379*)
- [Test your upgrade process](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178378) (*http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178378*)

In this guide:

- [About the upgrade process \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Learn about what's new in upgrade and how the upgrade process works.
- [Plan and prepare for upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Determine which approach you should take to upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010 and plan your upgrade process.
- [Testing and troubleshooting upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Learn how to test your upgrade process ahead of time to understand what issues you might face in your actual upgrade, and determine the time and space you will need for upgrade. Also, learn how to troubleshoot issues that come up during the actual upgrade.
- [Perform pre-upgrade steps \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Find out what steps you need to take before upgrading, including information about how to run the pre-upgrade checker.
- [Perform an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Follow the steps in this section if you are upgrading in-place to SharePoint Server 2010. When you upgrade in-place, you install SharePoint Server 2010 on the same hardware, and then upgrade the content and settings on the server or server farm as part of a single process.
- [Perform a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
Follow the steps in this section if you are using the database attach upgrade method to upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010. When you use the database attach upgrade method, you upgrade the content for the environment on a separate farm.
- [Perform post-upgrade steps \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Find out how to tell whether upgrade was completed successfully and what steps you need to perform after the upgrade to get your environment ready for users again.

-
- [Upgrade from other versions or other products](#)

Articles in this section contain information about how to upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 from related SharePoint products.

- [Migrate from forms-based authentication to claims-based authentication \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

This article provides guidance to help you migrate existing Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications, which were configured to use forms-based authentication, to work in a Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 environment as claims-based Web applications.

- [Migrate from classic-mode to claims-based authentication \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

The procedures in this article provide guidance to help you migrate existing Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 Web applications, which were configured to use classic-mode authentication, to use claims-based authentication.

See Also

[Using AAM URL redirection as part of the upgrade process \(SharePoint Server 2010\) \(white paper\)](#)

About the upgrade process (SharePoint Server 2010)

The first step in any upgrade process is to learn about the process itself so that you can plan and prepare appropriately. This section of the upgrade guide contains articles that help you understand how upgrade works and how the services in Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 are affected when you upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.

In this section:

- [What's new in upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Find out about new requirements, approaches, and features that are available for upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.
- [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Get a visual overview of the steps involved in each upgrade approach.
- [How upgrade affects search features \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Learn what can and cannot be upgraded for Search in Office SharePoint Server 2007, and understand additional steps that must be performed to upgrade Search to SharePoint Server 2010.
- [How other services are affected by upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Office SharePoint Server 2007 included several shared services. The services model is different for SharePoint Server 2010, which means that you must configure services that can be upgraded and you must migrate data or information for the services that cannot be upgraded. Find out which approach can upgrade which services and what steps that you must take before, during, and after upgrade for your existing shared services.
- [About upgrading farms that share services \(parent and child farms\) \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
In Office SharePoint Server 2007, it was possible to configure parent farms and child farms to share services. In such an environment, the parent farm hosts one or more Shared Services Providers (SSPs) from which one or more child farms consume services. Learn how to approach upgrading these environments.

What's new in upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 has been designed for scale and performance and as such requires new hardware and software requirements that are described in this article. These requirements apply to both the in-place and the database attach upgrade approaches. For more information, see [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In order to facilitate a predictable upgrade and minimize the impact of customization and environmental issues that may prevent a successful upgrade, you can use the Windows PowerShell **test-spcontentdatabase** cmdlet, the new Visual Upgrade option, or the **preupgradecheck** Stsadm operation.

In this article:

- [Upgrade requirements](#)
- [Pre-upgrade checker](#)
- [Windows PowerShell command to check databases before attaching](#)
- [Visual Upgrade](#)
- [Feature Upgrade](#)
- [New options for reducing downtime during upgrade](#)
- [Changes in key features between versions](#)

Upgrade requirements

Before you can perform an in-place upgrade or database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010, your existing Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment or new SharePoint Server 2010 environment must meet the following minimum requirements.



Note:

For more information about general system requirements for SharePoint Server 2010, see [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfe0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfe0cd(Office.14).aspx)). For more information about upgrade requirements, see [Review system requirements for upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Hardware requirement: 64-bit

SharePoint Server 2010 can only run on a 64-bit edition of the Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2008 with SP2 operating system. If you plan an in-place upgrade, your Office SharePoint Server 2007 installation must be running in a 64-bit Windows Server 2008 environment. If your Office

SharePoint Server 2007 installation is currently in a 32-bit environment, you cannot perform an in-place upgrade on the existing server or server farm. You must install SharePoint Server 2010 on a different server or farm that supports 64-bit applications, and then move your data to that server or farm by using database attach upgrade.

To more easily discover and address any issues in the migration and upgrade processes, we recommend that you do not combine the actions of migrating to a 64-bit environment and upgrading in-place to SharePoint Server 2010. Because you must have a 64-bit environment to be able to upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010, you must migrate to a 64-bit operating system before you perform an in-place upgrade. If you are using a database attach upgrade, you can migrate to 64-bit as part of your upgrade process.

Before you migrate to a 64-bit environment:

- Update Office SharePoint Server 2007 to the same service pack or software update level on all computers in the source farm.
- Find out whether you have to recompile existing 32-bit applications and custom assemblies — for example, Web Parts and event receivers — to run in the 64-bit environment. (Some applications can run in both environments and do not have to be recompiled.) If the existing applications are third-party applications, check with the third-party vendor about 64-bit versions and compatibility.

For more information about how to plan and perform a migration to a 64-bit environment, see the article [Migrate an existing server Farm to a 64-bit environment \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=155576) on TechNet (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=155576>).

Operating system requirement: Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2

SharePoint Server 2010 must be run on a 64-bit edition of Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2008 with Service Pack 2 (SP2). If you are currently running Office SharePoint Server 2007 on Windows Server 2003 and intend to upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010, you must plan to have a sufficient number of Windows Server licenses for the deployment on the newer operating system.

To more easily discover and address any issues in the migration and upgrade processes, we recommend that you do not combine the actions of upgrading or migrating to Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 with the process of upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010. You can combine migration to 64-bit hardware with migration to Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2.

- If you are already running 64-bit hardware, you can upgrade from Windows Server 2003 to Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2. For more information about how to perform an in-place upgrade to Windows Server 2008, see the article [Upgrading to Windows Server 2008 for Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 with SP1](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=155575) on TechNet (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=155575>).
- If you are migrating to 64-bit hardware, take the opportunity to also migrate to Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 at the same time. For more information about how to install Windows Server 2008 on Windows Server 2008, see the article [Deploy a simple farm on the Windows Server 2008 Operating System \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=145932) on TechNet (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=145932>).

Database requirement: 64-bit SQL Server 2005 SP3 or SQL Server 2008 SP1

SharePoint Server 2010 requires that its database server must be a 64-bit version of one of the following: Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 with Service Pack 1 (SP1) and Cumulative Update 2, or SQL Server 2005 with SP3 and Cumulative Update 3. If your current Office SharePoint Server 2007 installation uses SQL Server 2000, you must upgrade to one of these versions before you can upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010.

To more easily discover and address any issues in the migration and upgrade processes, we recommend that you do not combine the actions of migrating to 64-bit SQL Server with the process of upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010. You can combine the migration to 64-bit SQL Server with the overall process of migration to 64-bit hardware.

- If you are combining the migration to SQL Server 2005 SP3 or SQL Server 2008 on 64-bit hardware with an overall migration to a 64-bit environment, follow the guidance about how to migrate to a 64-bit environment earlier in this article.

For more information about how to migrate all databases, see the article [Move all databases \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=159761) on TechNet (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=159761>).

- If you already have 64-bit hardware, but have to upgrade to SQL Server 2005 SP3 or SQL Server 2008, follow the guidance in the SQL Server documentation.

Pre-upgrade checker

The pre-upgrade checker is a command-line tool that you run in a Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment to find any potential issues for upgrade and to review recommendations and best practices.

STSADM.exe -o preupgradecheck

By using the pre-upgrade checker, you can find information such as the following:

- A list of all servers and components in the farm, and whether the servers meet the following requirements for upgrading: 64-bit hardware and the Windows Server 2008 operating system.
- The alternate access mapping URLs that are being used in the farm.
- A list of all site definitions, site templates, features, and language packs that are installed in the farm.
- Whether there are customizations in the farm that are not supported (such as database schema modifications).
- Whether there are any database or site orphans in the farm.
- Whether there are missing or invalid configuration settings in the farm (such as a missing Web.config file, invalid host names, or invalid service accounts).
- Whether the databases meet the requirements for upgrade — for example, databases are set to read/write, and any databases and site collections that are stored in Windows Internal Database are not larger than 4 GB.

The pre-upgrade checker is available with Office SharePoint Server 2007 Service Pack 2 and has been updated in the October 2009 Cumulative Update for Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 and Office SharePoint Server 2007. You can download and install the October 2009 Cumulative Update from [October 2009 Cumulative Update Packages for SharePoint Server 2007 and Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 are published](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=169179) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=169179>). For more information about how to use the pre-upgrade checker, see the following articles on TechNet:

- [Preupgradecheck: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=149848) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=149848>)
- [Pre-upgrade scanning and reporting for future releases \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=148375) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=148375>)
- [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Windows PowerShell command to check databases before attaching

You can use the Windows PowerShell cmdlet **test-spcontentdatabase** before you attach a content database to SharePoint Server 2010 to determine whether any server-side customizations are missing from the environment. For more information, see [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#) and [Test-SPContentDatabase](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ed095a0a-fa1a-4323-8503-624f0e09707d(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ed095a0a-fa1a-4323-8503-624f0e09707d\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ed095a0a-fa1a-4323-8503-624f0e09707d(Office.14).aspx)).

Visual Upgrade

A new feature that is available with upgrade allows the server administrator or site owner to determine when and if the new look for SharePoint Server 2010 is used for a particular site collection. Server administrators can choose to adopt the new look and feel for all sites during upgrade, let site owners make the choice after upgrade, or keep the old look and feel for all sites.

If the server administrator lets the site owners decide, after a site is upgraded by using an in-place upgrade, a preview option is available in the site user interface. This option provides a preview of the SharePoint Server 2010 look for the site:

- If the owner likes how the site looks and functions, the owner can accept the visual upgrade.
- If the owner wants the site to keep the old look and feel, the owner can revert to the Office SharePoint Server 2007 look.

By default, the Office SharePoint Server 2007 look is retained. For more information, see [Plan visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Feature Upgrade

SharePoint Foundation 2010 provides new members and types that make it possible for you to upgrade custom Features through versioning and declarative upgrade actions. You can update any Features

you created for Office SharePoint Server 2007 to work with SharePoint Server 2010 by using these members. For more information, see [Upgrading Features](#).

New options for reducing downtime during upgrade

Depending on the environment and the complexity and number of SharePoint sites, the upgrade process can take a long time. To reduce downtime during this process, SharePoint Server 2010 supports the following options:

- **Upgrade multiple databases at the same time (parallel upgrade)** When you upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010, you can manually initiate upgrade for multiple databases at the same time by using the detach databases hybrid approach for upgrade. In Office SharePoint Server 2007, only one upgrade process could run at a time, so that each database needed to be processed sequentially. There is a performance impact when you run the upgrade on multiple databases instead of on a single database, but it may be faster to upgrade multiple databases at the same time than to upgrade them sequentially. The number of databases that can be upgraded in parallel will depend on the hardware in your environment and on the structure of the content within the databases. For more information, see [Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- **Use read-only databases to provide continuous access to data** If you perform a database attach upgrade — and if you set the original databases to read-only mode — the old farm can continue to serve content to users while you upgrade a copy of the databases on a new farm. If you do this, users can continue to access the data, although they cannot add new data or update the data. When the new farm is ready and all content has been successfully upgraded, users can be switched over to the new live farm.

For more information about read-only databases, see the article [Run a farm that uses read-only databases \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=148373>).

For more information about these techniques to reduce downtime, see the article [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Changes in key features between versions

SharePoint Server 2010 has a new architecture and includes many new capabilities. The following tables list some of the key changes to terminology and features that immediately affect the administration and site management process after upgrading.

For more information, see [Evaluation guide for SharePoint Server 2010 \(white paper\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7bf1551b-bb75-4f19-8aad-c1910a171871\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7bf1551b-bb75-4f19-8aad-c1910a171871(Office.14).aspx)).

| Concept, term, or feature | New or changed | Comments |
|--|----------------|---|
| Pre-upgrade checker | New | <p>The pre-upgrade checker is an Stsadm command-line operation that you run in an Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment to find any potential issues for upgrade and to review recommendations and best practices.</p> <p>Unlike the pre-upgrade scan tool (Prescan.exe) that was used when upgrading to Office SharePoint Server 2007, the pre-upgrade checker does not make any changes to your environment.</p> <p>For more information, see Run the pre-upgrade checker (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> |
| SharePoint Central Administration Web site | Changed | <p>The Central Administration Web site has been redesigned with such new available options and functionality as the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ribbon makes it easier for you to view or change details about a Web application by supplying all the options on the same page. For more information about Web applications, see Web applications management (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/1ad49d4e-598d-446c-aabd-de4a8f6ad391(Office.14).aspx). • Configuration Wizards have been added to make the configuration process easier by guiding you through the steps to configure the server farm. For more information, see Deploy a single server with SQL Server (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/356d3a0b-fc26-455c-9afb-6d2ffdceef84(Office.14).aspx). • You can now perform a backup from the Backup and Restore page. For more information, see Backup (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/79d47308-a90a-4c51-a1ae-93567e978236(Office.14).aspx). <p>You now use the Central Administration Web site to manage services, instead using a separate administration site.</p> |
| Ribbon | New | <p>The ribbon user interface has been introduced to ensure a consistent user experience and to make it easier for you to work with SharePoint sites. The ribbon is contextual so that you only see the options that are relevant to the tasks that you want to perform. The ribbon is also customizable.</p> |
| Service applications | New | <p>New services architecture allows you to effectively manage and centralize services. Individual services can be configured independently</p> |

| Concept, term, or feature | New or changed | Comments |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| | | <p>and third-party companies can add services to the platform.</p> <p>For more information, see Configure services (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2258fc12-68ad-4175-9735-812768a80093(Office.14).aspx).</p> |
| Master pages | Changed | <p>A site owner can now apply branding to their site, independent of other sites, and administrators can specify whether the system pages in the _Layouts folder are rendered by using the site master pages provided by site owners or by default master pages available across the system. Also, it is possible to use Windows PowerShell to specify a customer master page to system error pages, login pages, confirmation pages, and other non-site-specific pages.</p> |
| Themes | Changed | <p>SharePoint Server 2010 has changed the way themes work, making them easier to customize. You can import Microsoft PowerPoint 2010 themes directly into SharePoint Server 2010. Additionally, themes can now be applied to all subsites from this interface. For more information, see Plan for using themes (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bab1595f-4a73-4f46-be9f-831c46ae4805(Office.14).aspx).</p> |
| Business Connectivity Services (BCS) | New | <p>Business Connectivity Services (BCS) builds on the Business Data Catalog functionality available in the previous product version to provide access to external systems from SharePoint-based solutions. BCS supports interacting with external systems using SharePoint lists and Web Parts, and also supports interacting with data from rich Office clients. For more information, see Business Connectivity Services overview (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/02f10b70-d634-41ae-914e-5de337c8b408(Office.14).aspx).</p> |
| Claims-based authentication | New | <p>Claims-based authentication is a new, more powerful and flexible authentication model that works with any corporate identity system, including Active Directory Domain Services (AD DS), LDAP-based directories, application-specific databases, and new user-centric identity models such as LiveID. For more information, see Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> |
| Throttling and list controls | New | <p>Throttling and list controls are two new performance controls. Throttling provides a way to control server resources and is designed so that the server can be protected from overload during peak business hours.</p> |

| Concept, term, or feature | New or changed | Comments |
|---------------------------|----------------|--|
| | | SharePoint Server 2010 also provides several different settings that will restrict the queries that can be run against a large list. These settings can be configured for each Web application. |
| SharePoint Designer | Changed | SharePoint Server 2010 gives administrators added control over how SharePoint Designer is used in each Web application; for example, administrators control whether site administrators are allowed to customize master pages and layout pages, and whether site administrators can manage the URL structure of their site. |
| Developer dashboard | New | This is a new addition to server diagnostics and displays detailed information for each page load and therefore helps troubleshoot performance issues. |
| Sandboxed solutions | New | You can now enable site administrators to upload custom user code by using sandboxed solutions. For more information, see Plan for sandboxed solutions (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9a96fa5e-2361-4b81-a0ca-fc4d0513cbf4(Office.14).aspx). |

Upgrade process overview (SharePoint Server 2010)

You can choose between two basic upgrade approaches when you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010: in-place upgrade and database attach upgrade. An in-place upgrade is used to upgrade all Microsoft SharePoint sites on the same hardware. A database attach upgrade enables you to move your content to a new farm or new hardware. You can also combine these two types of upgrade in hybrid approaches that reduce downtime during an upgrade.

For more information about these approaches, see [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

This article helps you understand the steps that are involved in performing upgrades by using these approaches so that you can plan your upgrade process. For detailed information about how to use one of these upgrade processes, see the following topics:

- [Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
- [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

In this article:

- [In-place upgrade](#)
- [Database attach upgrade](#)
- [Hybrid approach 1: Read-only databases](#)
- [Hybrid approach 2: Detach databases](#)



Important:

It is important that the server administrator communicate with site owners and users about what to expect during an upgrade. The administrator should inform them about downtime and the risk that the upgrade may take longer than expected or that some sites may need some rework after upgrade. For more information, see [Create a communication plan \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In-place upgrade

An in-place upgrade takes place on the same hardware as your previous version installation. When you run an in-place upgrade, the process upgrades the complete installation in a fixed order.

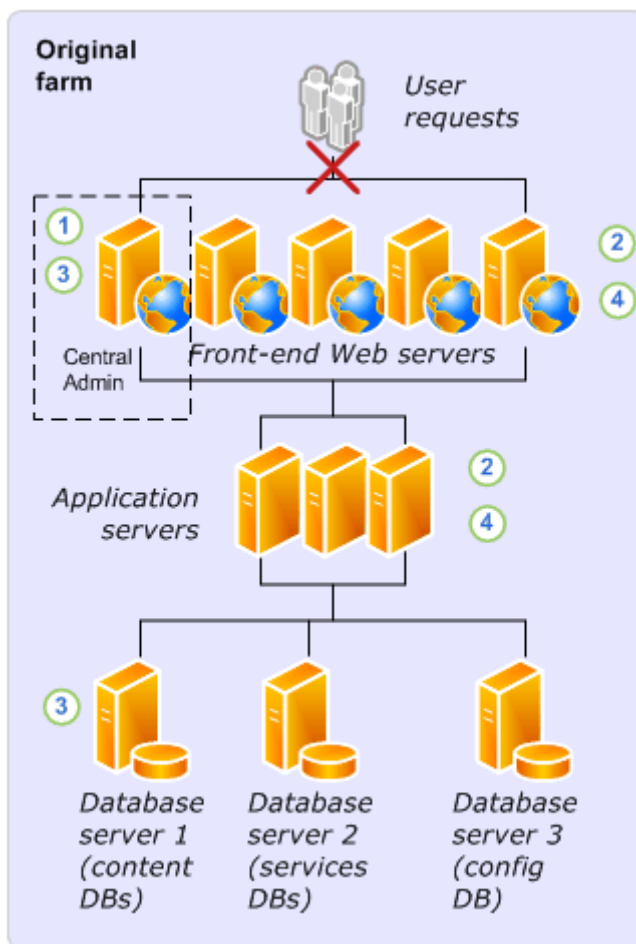
The following steps explain what happens as the in-place upgrade process runs:

1. After the server administrator performs all pre-upgrade steps, the administrator runs Setup for SharePoint Server 2010 on the server that runs the SharePoint Central Administration Web site. Because the previous version was installed, an in-place upgrade is automatically selected.

2. After Setup runs on the server that hosts the Central Administration Web site, the server administrator runs Setup on the remaining front-end Web servers and application servers in the farm.
3. The server administrator runs the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on the server that hosts the Central Administration Web site. This server, the configuration database, the services, and the content databases are upgraded sequentially.

When the configuration wizard finishes, the Central Administration Web site opens. A timer job schedules the upgrade process to run for each site collection. The upgrade process timer job upgrades each site collection. After all sites are upgraded, the upgrade process ends.

4. The server administrator runs the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on all the other servers in the farm.



5. The server administrator confirms that the upgrade has finished successfully.

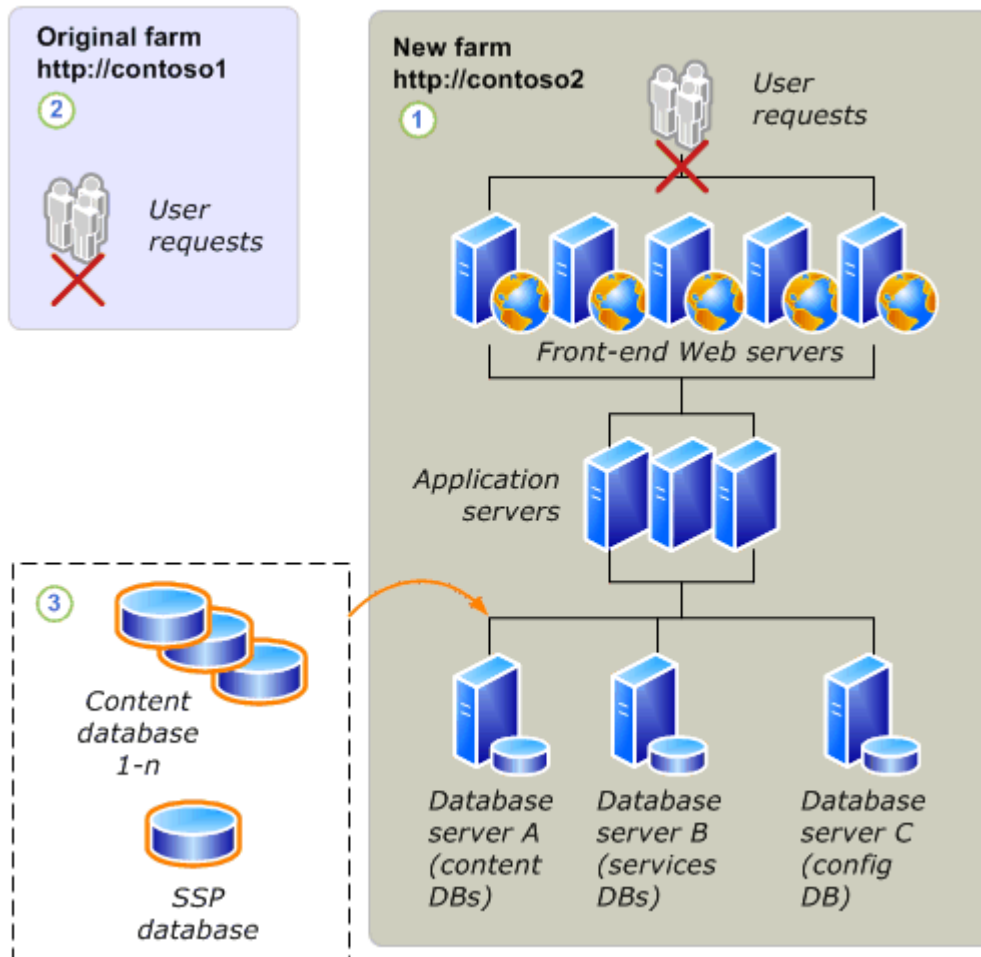
-
6. If Visual Upgrade is being used, the server administrator or site owner previews sites in the Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 look. When the administrator or site owner is ready, he or she completes the change to the SharePoint Server 2010 look.

Database attach upgrade

A database attach upgrade enables you to move to new hardware or a new farm. During a database attach upgrade, you detach all the content databases from an existing farm and then attach the databases to a new server farm installation. When you attach the databases to the new server farm, the upgrade process runs and upgrades the data in place.

The following steps explain what happens during a database attach upgrade:

1. The server administrator sets up and configures a new SharePoint Server 2010 farm. The administrator transfers all customizations to the new farm and tests the environment.
For more information about how to configure the new environment, see [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#).
2. The server administrator detaches the content databases from the old Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm and takes the old farm offline (for example, by changing the load balancer or IIS Web applications to stop service requests, or by turning off all the components and services on each server computer in the farm).
3. The server administrator attaches the content databases to the new farm and upgrades the content.



4. The server administrator confirms that the upgrade has finished successfully and then configures the new farm to start serving requests at the new URL.

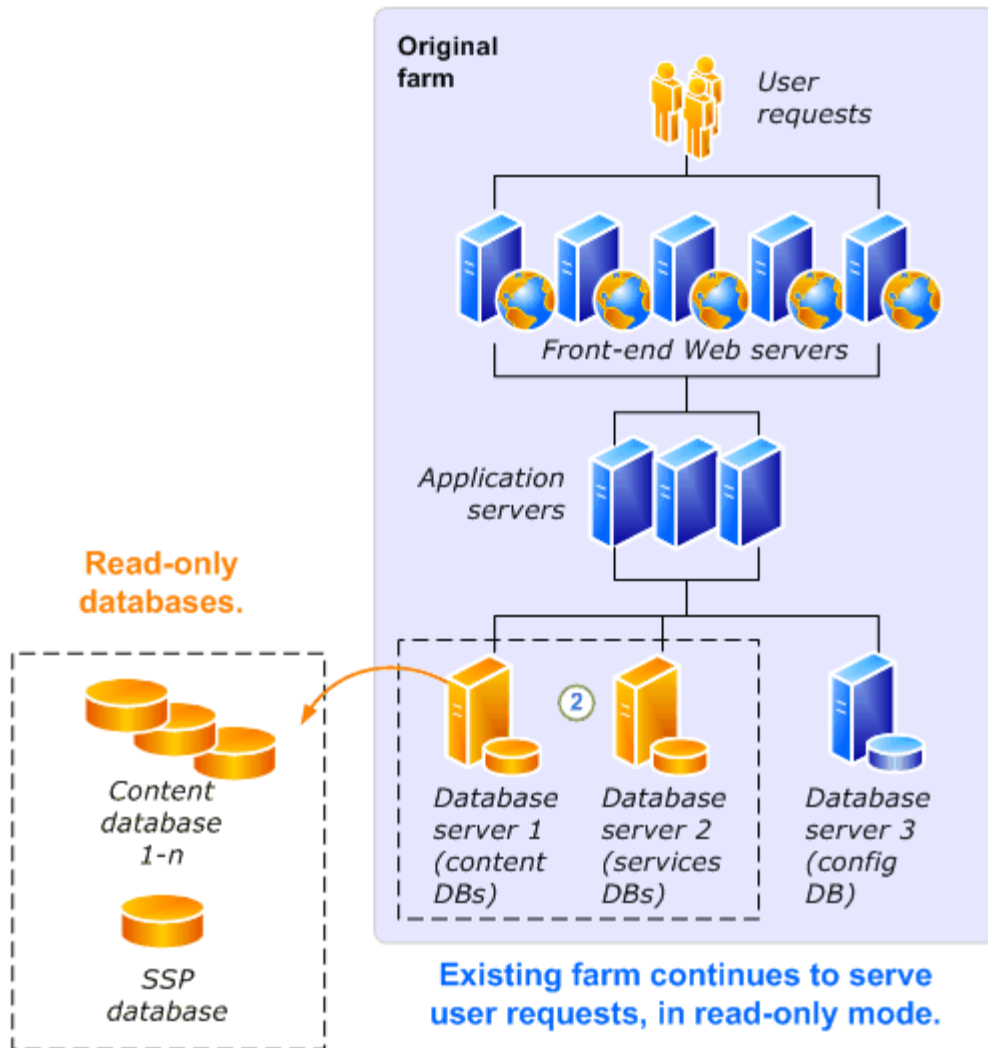
Hybrid approach 1: Read-only databases

This approach gives users continuous read-only access to their data while you upgrade. The content databases in the original farm are set to read-only, and copies of the databases are upgraded on a new farm.

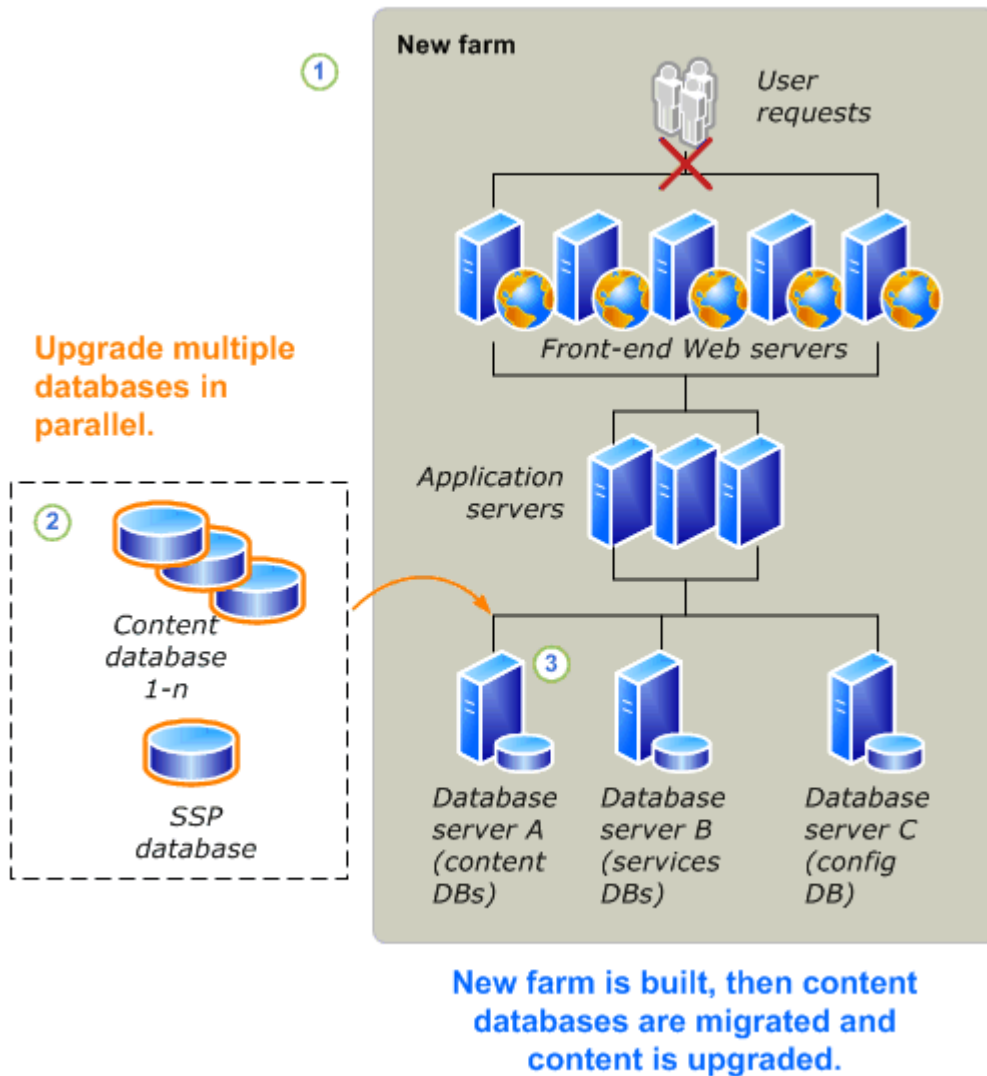
The following steps explain what happens during a database attach upgrade with read-only databases:

1. The server administrator sets up and configures a new SharePoint Server 2010 farm. The administrator transfers all customizations to the new farm and tests the environment.

- The server administrator changes the content databases to read-only. The administrator then uses SQL Server to back up the content databases on the Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm and restore them to the new farm.



- The server administrator attaches the new copies of the content databases, and the upgrade process runs and upgrades the content.



4. After the upgrade process runs, the server administrator confirms that the upgrade has finished successfully. The administrator then configures the new farm to start serving requests at the new URL and takes the original farm offline (for example, by changing the load balancer or IIS Web applications to stop service requests, or by turning off all the components and services on each server computer in the farm).

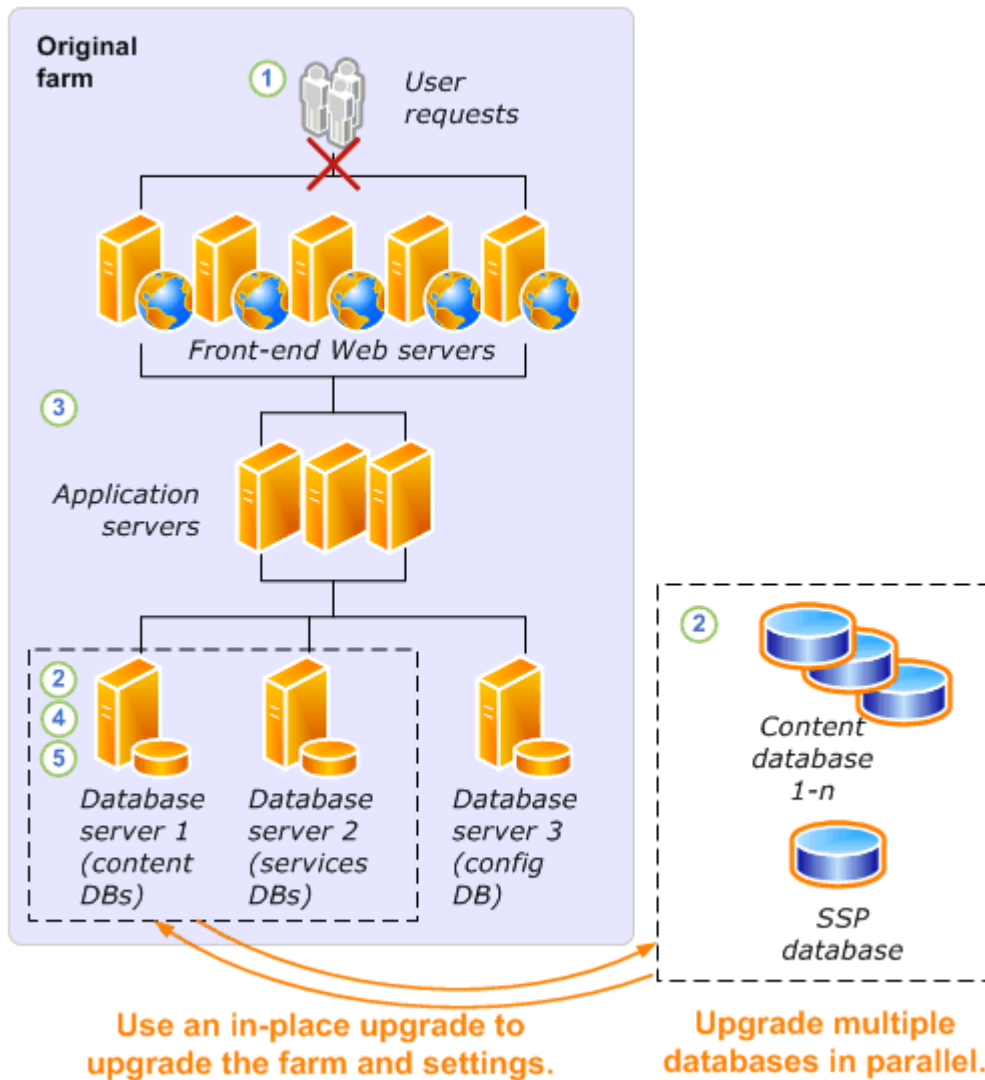
Hybrid approach 2: Detach databases

This approach enables you to speed up the upgrade process by detaching and attaching databases to upgrade multiple databases at the same time. It is an in-place upgrade because you are upgrading the

original farm; however, you can also use another farm to perform the upgrade and then attach the upgraded databases to your original farm. Note that the original farm cannot serve requests during the upgrade process. As in a standard in-place upgrade, users cannot access their content while the upgrade is in progress.

The following steps explain what happens during an in-place upgrade with detached databases:

1. The server administrator takes the original farm offline (for example, by changing the load balancer or IIS Web applications to stop service requests, or by turning off all of the components and services on each server computer in the farm).
2. The server administrator detaches the content databases from the original farm.
3. The server administrator runs an in-place upgrade on the original farm servers, services, and configuration database.
4. The server administrator attaches the content databases to the original farm and upgrades the content.

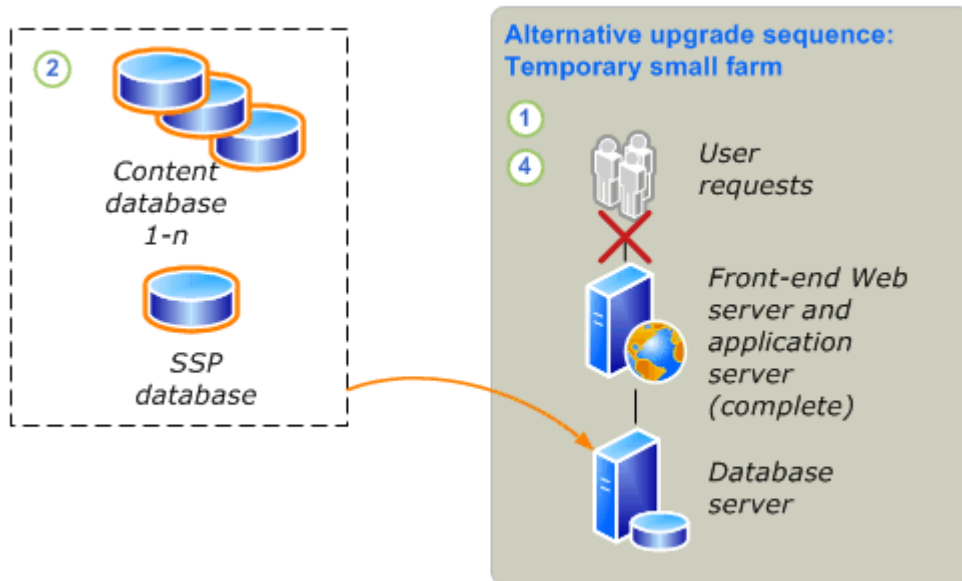


Alternatively, you can use a separate, temporary small farm to perform the upgrade. In this approach, you attach the databases to the original farm after they have been upgraded.

The following steps explain what happens during an in-place upgrade with detached databases and a temporary small farm to upgrade the content databases:

1. The server administrator sets up a temporary small farm that is running the new version. Then the administrator takes the original farm offline (for example, by changing the load balancer or IIS Web applications to stop service requests, or by turning off all the components and services on each server computer in the farm).
2. The server administrator detaches the content databases from the original farm.

3. The server administrator runs an in-place upgrade on the original farm to upgrade the servers, services, and configuration database.
4. The server administrator attaches the content databases to the temporary small farm and upgrades them in parallel.
5. The server administrator reattaches the content databases to the original farm.



6. The server administrator confirms that the upgrade has finished successfully.
7. If Visual Upgrade is being used, the server administrator or site owner previews sites in the Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 look. When the administrator or site owner is ready, he or she completes the change to the Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 look.

How upgrade affects search features (SharePoint Server 2010)

When you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, several aspects of the search system are affected. The following articles describe effects of product upgrade on the search system:

- [How upgrade affects search system architecture \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

This article describes how the following features or functions are affected by upgrade:

- Search service
 - Search service configuration dependencies
 - Databases
 - Crawling
 - Serving queries
 - Content index
 - Propagation of content index
 - Shared Services Provider (SSP) and Search service application naming
- [How upgrade affects Search Center sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Search Center sites that an administrator creates in SharePoint Server 2010 have a new look compared to the look of sites created in Office SharePoint Server 2007. During product upgrade, a server administrator can upgrade old sites to the new look. After upgrade, site owners can upgrade old sites one at a time.

How upgrade affects search system architecture (SharePoint Server 2010)

The information in the following table describes how features and functions of the search system architecture are affected when you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.

| Feature or function | Feature or function in Office SharePoint Server 2007 | Corresponding feature or function in SharePoint Server 2010 |
|---------------------|--|--|
| Search service | <p>A Shared Services Provider (SSP) hosts one or more centrally managed, reusable services. These services can be consumed by multiple Web applications in a farm. One of the services is the Office SharePoint Server Search service (OSearch). The OSearch service is used to crawl content repositories, index the crawled content, and serve search queries that are issued by end-users.</p> <p>However, an administrator might want to define more than one group of search settings for a farm-wide search configuration. For example, for security reasons the administrator might want to dedicate one content index to one set of content sources, and another content index to another set of content sources. To define an additional group of settings for a farm-wide search system, the search administrator must configure the OSearch service in a different SSP. If there is no other SSP in the farm that can be used for this purpose, the farm administrator must create a new SSP. However, each SSP requires maintenance and can consume system resources in addition to those that are used for the OSearch service.</p> | <p>For each SSP that existed in the farm before upgrade, the upgrade process automatically creates a <i>Search service application</i>. At upgrade time, the administrative settings from the OSearch service in an SSP are copied to the corresponding new Search service application. For example, the new Search service application contains the content sources, scopes, and crawl rules from the OSearch service in the corresponding SSP.</p> |

| Feature or function | Feature or function in Office SharePoint Server 2007 | Corresponding feature or function in SharePoint Server 2010 |
|---|--|---|
| Search service configuration dependencies | In an SSP, the search administrator configures the OSearch service to define one group of settings (such as content sources and scopes) for a farm-wide search system. Each SSP can contain only one OSearch service. Therefore, an SSP can contribute only one group of settings to the farm-wide search system. | Each Search service application contributes one group of settings (such as content sources and scopes) for a farm-wide search system. A Search service application requires no host such as an SSP. To add a new group of settings to a farm-wide search system, the search administrator merely creates and configures an additional Search service application. |
| Databases | <p>For each SSP, there are two databases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The SSP database. This database contains: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Administrative settings for search, such as content sources and scopes. • The profile store (Office SharePoint Server 2007 only). • The search database. This database contains: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crawler internal data, such as crawl logs. • The property store, which includes the metadata from crawled documents. | <p>For each SSP that existed before upgrade, the following three databases are created and associated with the corresponding Search service application:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The search administration database. This database contains the administrative settings for search that were stored in the SSP database. • The crawl database. This database contains the crawler internal data that was stored in the SSP database. • The property database. This database is largely the same as the search database that existed before upgrade. (Some information that was in the search database before upgrade is moved into the search administration database and crawl database.) <p>There is only one search administration database per Search service application. After an upgrade, however, the crawl database and property database can be scaled out.</p> |
| Crawling | An index server has a single crawler. | A <i>crawl server</i> contains one or more crawl components that can crawl content independently of one another. |

| Feature or function | Feature or function in Office SharePoint Server 2007 | Corresponding feature or function in SharePoint Server 2010 |
|--|---|---|
| Serving queries | A query server has only one component to serve search queries. | A query server can host one or more query components, each of which serves search queries. |
| Content index | Each SSP can contain only one OSearch service, and there is one corresponding content index. | <p>For each SSP that existed before upgrade, one index partition is created with one query component. An in-place upgrade copies the entire content index from the SSP to the new index partition. After upgrade, the administrator can scale out to multiple index partitions. Each index partition contains a discrete part of the index. For example, in a topology with two index partitions, each partition contains half of the index.</p> <p>In a database-attach upgrade, the old content index is not retained. To create an index, it is necessary to perform a full crawl after the upgrade.</p> |
| Propagation of content index | The search system stores the content index in the file system of the index server. The search system also propagates a copy of the content index to the file system of each query server. | Each crawl component propagates the content index to the index partitions on the query servers. The search system stores the content index in the file systems of the query servers. The crawl server does not keep a copy of the content index. |
| Naming of SSP and Search service application | Each SSP in a server farm has a unique name — for example, SharedServices1. | Each Search service application that is created during the upgrade process has a default name that is based on the name of the corresponding SSP from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007. For example, if the SSP was named SharedServices1, by default the corresponding Search service application is named SharedServices1_Search. However, the administrator can customize these database names with an XML file that is used at upgrade time. |

See Also

[How upgrade affects Search Center sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

How upgrade affects Search Center sites (SharePoint Server 2010)

Search Center sites that an administrator creates in SharePoint Server 2010 have a new look compared to the look of Search Center sites created in Office SharePoint Server 2007. During product upgrade, a server administrator can upgrade old sites to the new look. After product upgrade, a site owner can upgrade old sites one at a time.



Note:

This article is specific to the effect of upgrade on Search Center sites. It does not pertain to the effect of upgrade on other types of SharePoint sites.

In this article:

- [Server administrator options for upgrading sites during product upgrade](#)
- [Site owner options for upgrading sites after product upgrade](#)

Server administrator options for upgrading sites during product upgrade

During product upgrade, the server administrator can specify one of the following three options for upgrading Search Center sites to the new look:

- Keep the old look for all existing sites.
- Keep the old look for sites that were customized, and apply the new look to sites that were not customized.
- Apply the new look to all existing sites.

The effect of the server administrator's choice on an existing site depends on which of the following three levels of customization the existing site has:

- No customization
- Minor customization (such as minor modifications to Web Part properties and cascading style sheets)
- Extensive customization (such as significant modifications to page layout, cascading style sheets, and master-pages)

The following table shows how the look of a Search Center site after product upgrade is affected by the level of customization of the existing site and the visual upgrade option that the server administrator selects at upgrade time.

| This visual upgrade option | Has this effect on Search Center sites that were created in Office SharePoint Server 2007 | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| | Sites with no customization | Sites with minor customization | Sites with extensive customization |
| Keep old look for all sites. | All sites keep the old look. | All sites keep the old look and old customizations. | All sites keep the old look and old customizations. |
| Keep old look for sites that were customized, and apply new look to all sites that were not customized. | All sites get the new look. | Sites that were not customized get the new look. Sites that were customized keep the old look. | Sites that were not customized get the new look. Sites that were customized keep the old look. It might be necessary to adjust some cascading style sheets so that the upgraded Search Center closely matches the old look. If the page layout was customized before upgrade, after upgrade the administrator must add code so that the new layout displays the ribbon. For more information, see Displaying the Server Ribbon and Site Actions Menu on Customized Search Pages Upgraded to SharePoint 2010 Using Visual Upgrade (http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=178924). |
| Apply new look to all sites. | All sites get the new look. | All sites get the new look. Old customizations are carried over. | All sites get the new look. Old customizations that an administrator provided in separate page layout and master page files that are on disk (not in the product database) are retained following upgrade. However, old customizations of native Office SharePoint Server 2007 search page layouts and master pages are lost. |



Note:

Some kinds of Search Center site customizations are not supported. This includes customizations that directly alter related files on disk. Also, transfer of such customizations during the upgrade process and use of the customizations after upgrade are not supported. Some kinds of Search Center site customizations are not supported.

Web Parts that are new in SharePoint Server 2010 are not added to upgraded sites. For example, the Refinement Web Part is new in SharePoint Server 2010 and is not added during upgrade. The site owner can add it to the left zone manually after upgrade.

Site owner options for upgrading sites after product upgrade

Following the product upgrade, site owners can upgrade sites from the old look to the new look one at a time. However, the site owner's options are affected by the decisions that the administrator specifies during upgrade. For example, if the administrator upgraded all existing sites to the new look, the site owner has no choices remaining in this regard after upgrade.

Before committing to upgrade a site to the new look, the site owner can preview the new look for a site by using the **Title, Description, and Icon** link on the Site Settings page. This preview capability is especially helpful when the site was customized in Office SharePoint Server 2007 because it enables the site owner to determine how much work might be required to upgrade the site to the new look.

See Also

[How upgrade affects search system architecture \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

How other services are affected by upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

When you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you have the opportunity to take advantage of new features and new configuration options. In SharePoint Server 2010, the services infrastructure has been updated to give you more flexibility in how you configure services, and there are many more services than were available in Office SharePoint Server 2007. Because of this architectural change, upgrading your services data requires planning and thought beforehand. You need to understand the new services infrastructure, how services upgrade works, and the considerations to think about for specific services that you want to upgrade to the new version.

In this article:

- [Updated services infrastructure for SharePoint Server 2010](#)
- [In-place upgrade with services](#)
- [Database attach upgrade with services](#)
- [Considerations for specific services](#)

Updated services infrastructure for SharePoint Server 2010

In SharePoint Server 2010, services are no longer contained in a Shared Services Provider (SSP). Instead, the infrastructure for hosting services moves into Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010 and the configuration of service offerings is much more flexible. Individual services can be configured independently, and third-party companies can add services to the platform. Many services that stored data in the SSP database have their own databases — in some cases, several databases. When you enable new services, new databases are also created to store the data for those services. The following table lists services databases in your pre-upgrade and post-upgrade environments. This list is only an example. The list of databases will vary depending on which services are enabled in your environment.

| Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 services databases before upgrade | SharePoint Server 2010 databases after in-place upgrade |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Search database • SSP database • SSP Admin Site content database | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Application Registry database • BDC Service database • Search Service Admin database • Search Service Crawl Store database • Search Service Property Store database • Session state service database • State service database • Taxonomy database • User Profile databases • WSS Usage database • More... |

Before you begin the upgrade process for services, review the updated services infrastructure and determine which services you have to upgrade and which new services you want to incorporate into your upgraded environment. Plan the logical and physical architecture you need to support the services and service applications you want to host in your SharePoint Server 2010 environment. For more information, see [Logical architecture components \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/aaed3a01-f4dc-4353-abda-0beced2080b6(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/aaed3a01-f4dc-4353-abda-0beced2080b6\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/aaed3a01-f4dc-4353-abda-0beced2080b6(Office.14).aspx)) and the Services models in [Technical diagrams \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bcbae7bd-656b-4003-969c-8411b81fcd77(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bcbae7bd-656b-4003-969c-8411b81fcd77\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bcbae7bd-656b-4003-969c-8411b81fcd77(Office.14).aspx)).

In-place upgrade with services

When you perform an in-place upgrade, all of your services infrastructure and the settings for the services themselves are upgraded as part of the process. The following sections and diagrams explain what happens to the different services components during the upgrade process.

- **Shared Service Providers (SSPs)**

During an in-place upgrade, any SSPs are converted to service applications and service application proxies, one per service. They are given default names (for example, if the SSP was named SharedServices1, the service applications will be named SharedServices1_ service, such as “SharedServices1_Search). All SSPs that are upgraded keep their associations with the Web applications that consumed from that SSP. All SSP administrators are added to the SharePoint Central Administration Web site as delegated administrators.
- **Databases**

The SSP database is upgraded and data is copied into new user profiles and taxonomy databases. Other services information is moved into other service databases or the configuration database.

- **Sites**

The SSP Admin site is upgraded as a mostly blank site except for the Business Data Catalog profile pages. The site can be deleted after upgrade if it is not needed for Business Data Catalog pages.

Before in-place upgrade

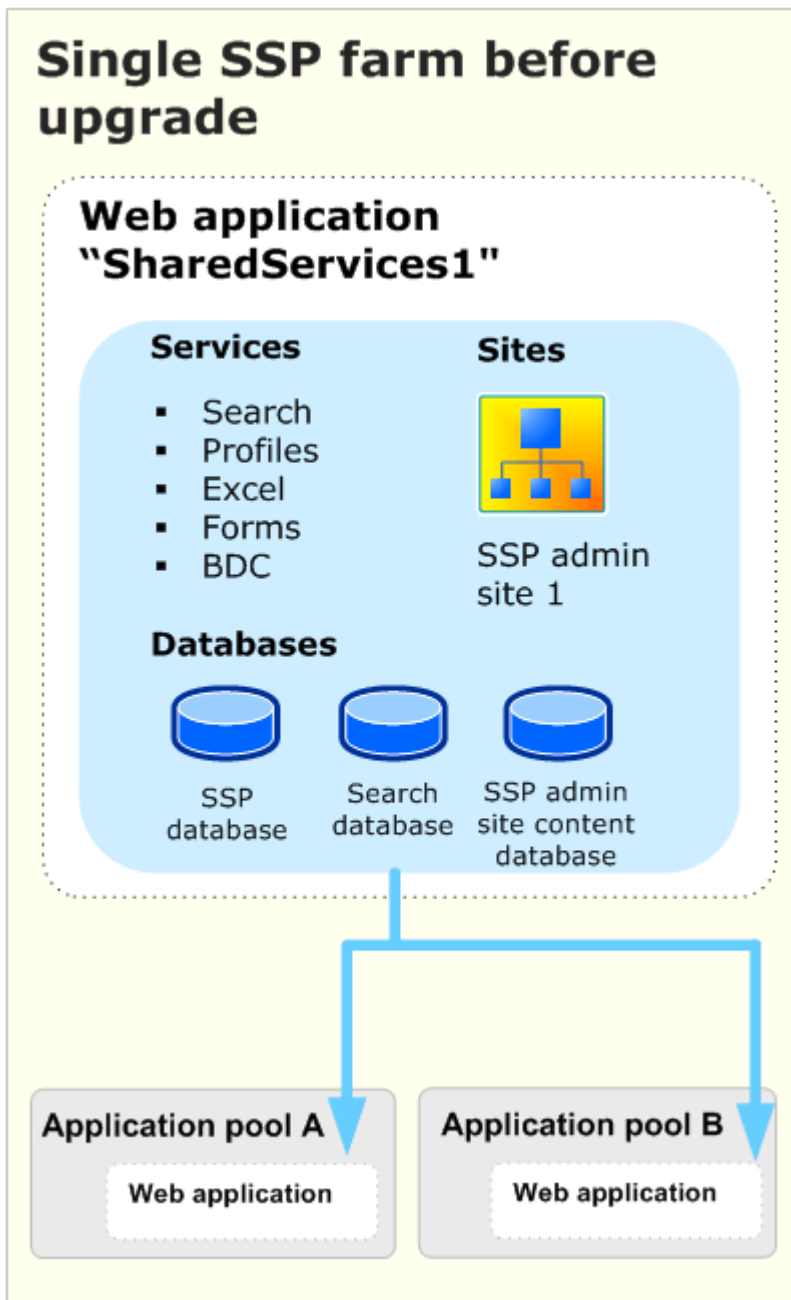
- Collect any settings that must be reapplied, such as scheduled timer job settings.
- Review your services architecture and determine what, if any, changes to make after upgrade.

For detailed information about steps to perform before you begin an in-place upgrade, see [Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

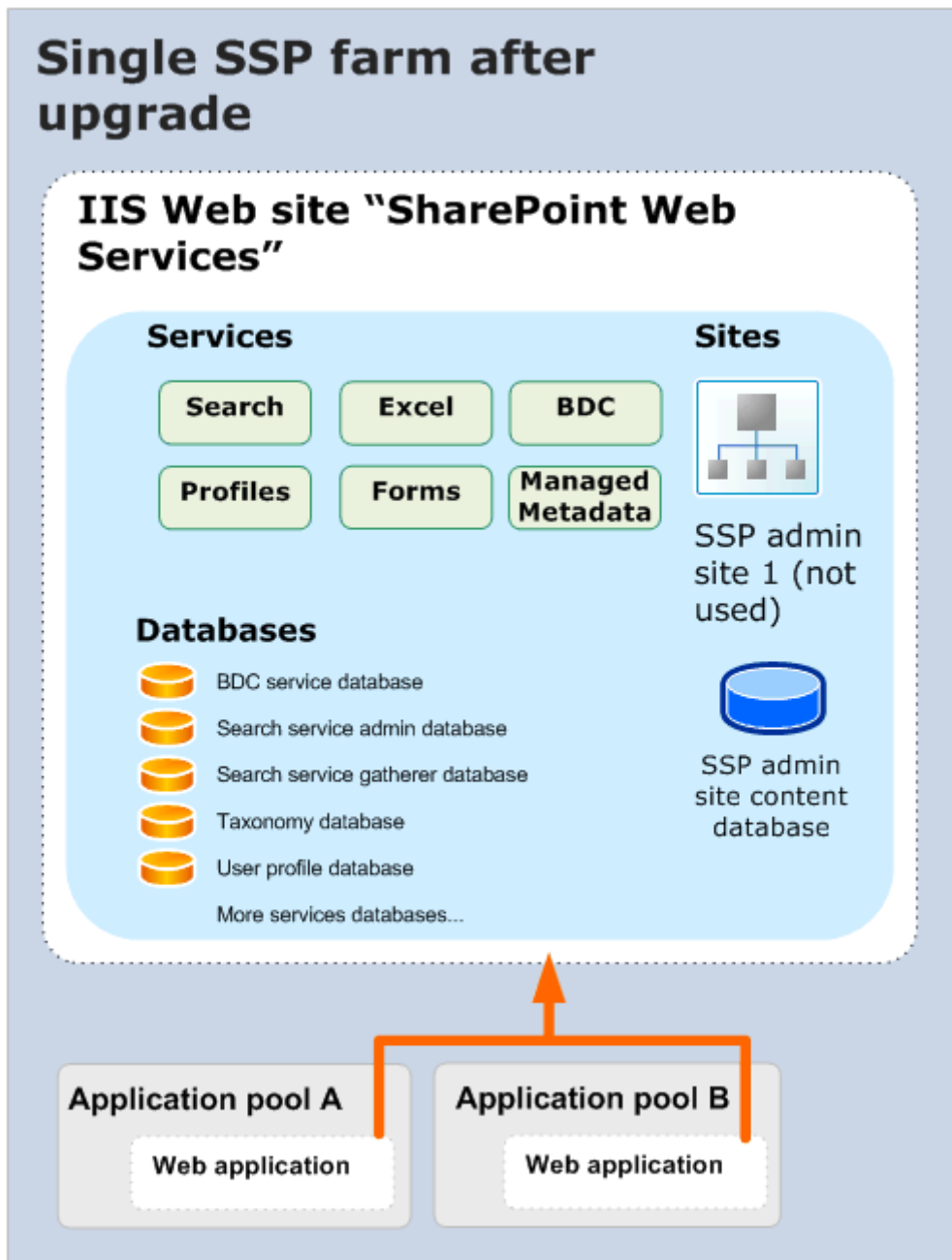
During in-place upgrade

If you have a single SSP, all proxies for service applications are added to the default proxy group. The following diagrams show the changes to your farm that are made during in-place upgrade.

Services infrastructure before upgrade:

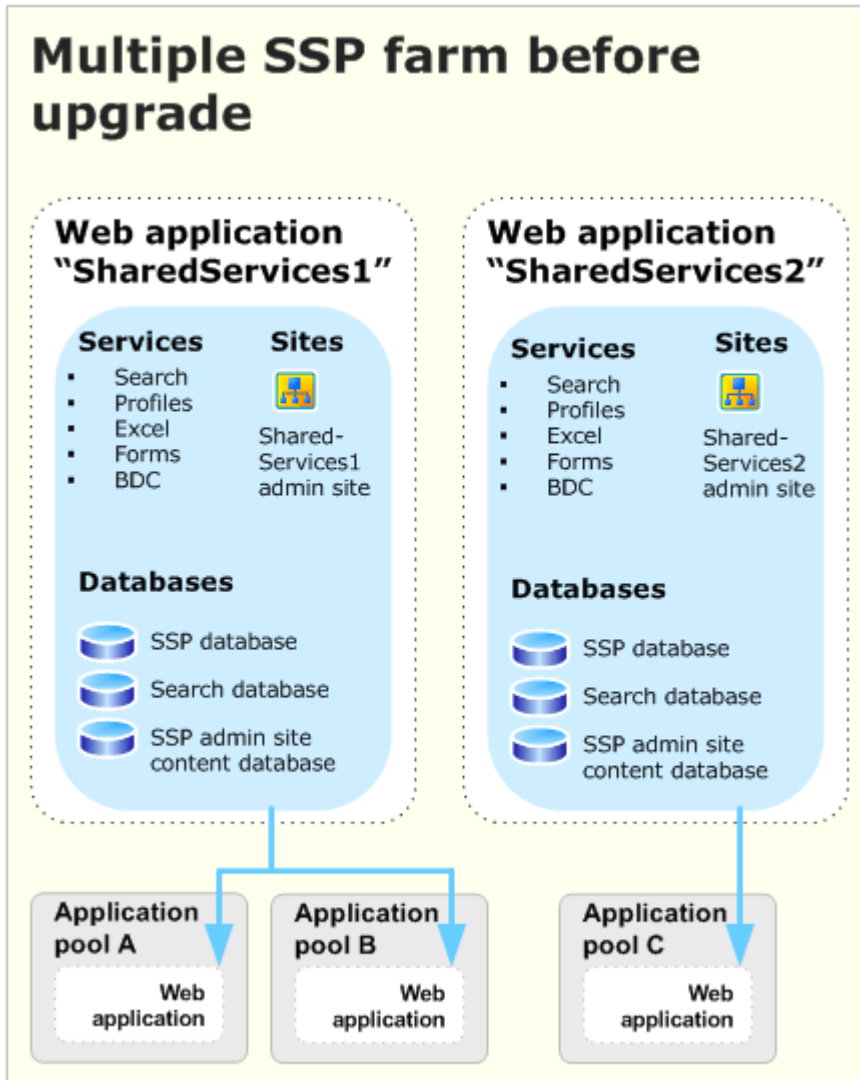


Services infrastructure after upgrade:

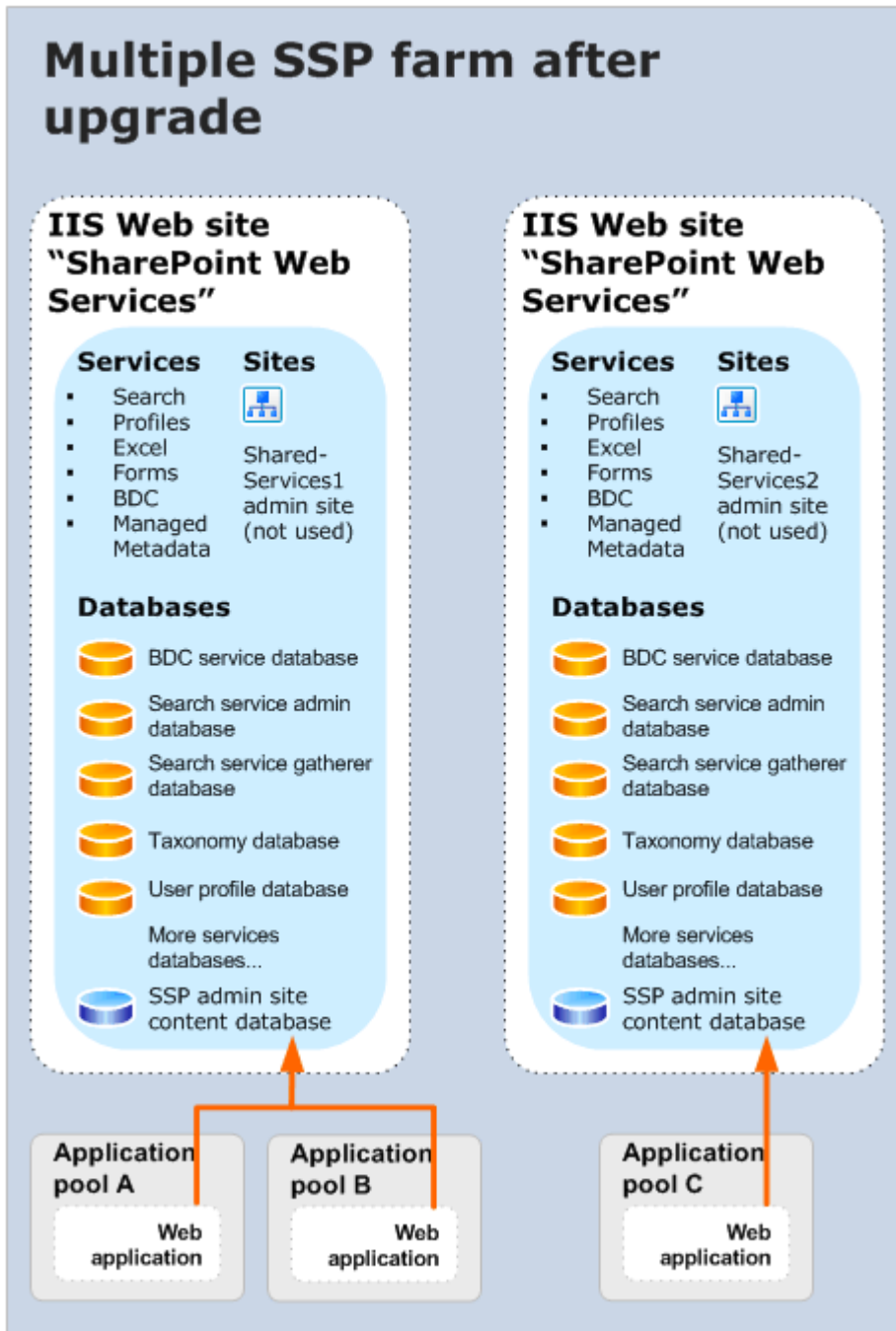


If you have multiple SSPs, they will all be upgraded together, and you will have multiple proxy groups after the upgrade. The following diagrams show the changes to your farm that are made during in-place upgrade.

Services infrastructure before upgrade:



Services infrastructure after upgrade:



For more information and detailed steps for performing an in-place upgrade, see [Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

After in-place upgrade

- **Configure new and upgraded services**

Many new services are available in SharePoint Server 2010. You can enable these new services after you perform an in-place upgrade.

- You must create service applications to host any new services. You can use the Farm Configuration Wizard to quickly select and enable several new services in your farm, or you can configure the services manually.
- You can also add proxies for any service applications that you want to use with different Web applications.
- For Profile Services, upgrade any taxonomy data manually.
- For Excel Services, provision a new unattended service account for the Secure Store Service.
- For Business Data Catalog, consider migrating the Business Data Catalog profile pages to a new location.

For detailed information about post-upgrade steps for services, see [Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Database attach upgrade with services

Most services settings will need to be reconfigured when you upgrade via database attach. When you move your databases to a new farm and upgrade the content, you must create your services infrastructure in the new farm, and configure the services appropriately for your new farm and new version. You can attach the SSP databases from your old farm, but only the profile information in that database will be upgraded — any search information or other services settings will not be upgraded. You cannot upgrade Search databases by using the database attach upgrade approach.

If you are using the database attach approach for upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010, there are several steps to perform before, during, and after the upgrade to successfully reconfigure the services infrastructure.

Before database attach upgrade

- When you configure the new farm, you must also configure the new service applications and service application proxies for the farm, and configure the settings for all services that you want to use.
- If you are using Profile Services, and you have taxonomy data in your database, configure the Managed Metadata service before you upgrade. That way, you can upgrade any taxonomy data from the shared services database when you attach that database.

- For InfoPath Forms Services, export any administrator-deployed form templates (.xsn files) and data connection files (.udcx files) from your Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm by using the following command:

Stsadm.exe -o exportipfsadminobjects -filename<path to export CAB>

- For InfoPath Forms Services, import any administrator-deployed form templates and data connection files to your new farm before you attach the content databases. Use the **Import-SPIAdministrationFiles** Windows PowerShell cmdlet to import the forms.

For more information about how to configure your new environment before you perform a database attach upgrade, see [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#).

During database attach upgrade

When you attach and upgrade the content databases, you also attach and upgrade the SSP database, which upgrades the profile information in the database. The following table provides an example of the services databases that exist before and after upgrade.

| Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 services databases that can be upgraded by using the database attach approach | SharePoint Server 2010 databases after a database attach upgrade |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSP database | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSP database Only contains user profile data, no search or other services data. Note that the name does not change during a database attach upgrade. • Taxonomy database If the Managed Metadata service was configured before upgrading, and if taxonomy data existed in the SSP database, this database contains that data. |

For more information and procedures for performing a database attach upgrade, see [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

After database attach upgrade

- Reapply administrator permissions for services. By default, farm administrators have permissions to all services when you perform a database attach upgrade.
- For Excel Services, you must provision a new unattended service account that uses the Secure Store Service to interact with Excel Services.

-
- For InfoPath Forms Services, update any links that are used in the upgraded form templates by using the **Update-SPInfoPathAdminFileURL** Windows PowerShell cmdlet.
 - For Profile Services, upgrade any taxonomy data. You use the **Move-SPProfileManagedMetadataProperty** Windows PowerShell cmdlet to upgrade profile taxonomy data manually to the Taxonomy database and reconnect the data to the Managed Metadata and User Profiles service applications. The User Profiles service and Managed Metadata service must be in the same proxy group to upgrade and use the data.
 - For Business Data Catalog, consider migrating the Business Data Catalog profile pages to a new location.

For detailed information about post-upgrade steps for services, see [Perform post-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Considerations for specific services

The following services were available in Office SharePoint Server 2007 and can be upgraded to SharePoint Server 2010. Changes in the services infrastructure mean that there are additional things to consider when planning and performing an upgrade for an environment where these services are present.

User profiles

- **Services**

Two services are now used for user profiles and taxonomy information: the User Profile service and the Managed Metadata service. During in-place upgrade, these two services are automatically enabled and configured. If you are using the database attach upgrade approach, you can enable and configure the Managed Metadata service before you upgrade the User Profile service to upgrade the taxonomy data as part of the upgrade.

- **Databases**

- During in-place upgrade, user profile data from Office SharePoint Server 2007 is upgraded from the SSP database into a new user profile database. Any taxonomy data is upgraded, and you can copy the taxonomy data into a Taxonomy database for use by the Managed Metadata service after upgrade is complete by using the **Move-SPProfileManagedMetadataProperty** Windows PowerShell cmdlet.
- During a database attach upgrade, user profile and taxonomy data from the SSP database is upgraded when the SSP database is attached, but the database is not copied and renamed. You can copy the taxonomy data into a Taxonomy database for use by the Managed Metadata service after upgrade is complete by using the **Move-SPProfileManagedMetadataProperty** Windows PowerShell cmdlet.
- Any scheduled timer jobs will need to be reconfigured after upgrade. During upgrade, they are set back to their default times. Be sure to record your timer job schedules before upgrade so you can reapply the times.

-
- Persisted properties that relate to the profiles (such as the MySite Host URL) are preserved during an in-place upgrade, but are not upgraded when you use database attach because they are stored in the configuration database, not the services database.

The following properties are preserved during in-place upgrade, but not during a database attach upgrade:

- MySiteHostURL
- SearchCenterURL
- EnablePersonalFeaturesforMultipleDeployments
- ProfileStoreLanguage
- ProfileStoreLanguagePacksApplied
- ProfileStoreCollationID
- DaysWorthOfEventsToKeep

My Site Web sites

Upgrade the My Site host at the same time that you upgrade the profile services. You do not need to upgrade the My Site Web sites themselves at the same time. For best results, upgrade My Site Web sites (or at least the My Site host) at the same time as your main intranet site.

Office SharePoint Server Search

Before you perform an in-place upgrade, you should review and adjust your Search topology after upgrade to suit the new recommendations and requirements. For more information, see [Plan search \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263400.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263400.aspx>) and the Search models in [Technical diagrams \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bcbae7bd-656b-4003-969c-8411b81fcd77(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bcbae7bd-656b-4003-969c-8411b81fcd77\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bcbae7bd-656b-4003-969c-8411b81fcd77(Office.14).aspx)).

You cannot upgrade search data by using the database attach method for upgrading. If you are using database attach upgrade, you must configure Search in your new farm separately from (either before or after) you upgrade your other content.

- **Service applications**

During upgrade, for each SSP that hosts the Search service in your Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm, a new service application is created in your SharePoint Server 2010 farm.

The application server that was serving as the index server becomes the crawl component on the same server.

Any query servers become query components on the same servers, all in the same index partition.

- **Databases**

In SharePoint Server 2010, the Search service uses three databases:

-
- Search administration database (new): contains Search administration settings that were stored in the SSP database in Office SharePoint Server 2007.
 - Search Service Crawl Store database (new): contains crawl history information that was stored in the SSP database in Office SharePoint Server 2007.
 - Search Service Property Store database (reused Search database): contains the metadata for search.
 - **Index files**

Before upgrade, index files are stored on the index server and the query servers. After upgrade, only servers that have query components will store index files.

**Tip:**

Upgrade will be faster if you scale down to one query server before you upgrade. With only one server, there is less data to copy. You can scale out again after upgrade to multiple mirrored query components.

Windows SharePoint Services Search

The Windows SharePoint Services Search service has been re-architected in SharePoint Server 2010. During an in-place upgrade, the Windows SharePoint Services Search service is stopped and reprovisioned. Windows SharePoint Services Search stores index files on the application server in Office SharePoint Server 2007 and also has a database (WSS_Search, one per server in your farm). During an in-place upgrade, the database is restructured and reused. The old data is not kept and is not upgraded.

InfoPath Forms Services

When you upgrade by using the database attach upgrade approach, you must export any administrator-deployed form templates (.xsn files) and data connection files (.udcx files) before you perform the database attach, and then import them to the new farm by using the **Export-SPInfoPathAdministrationFiles** Windows PowerShell cmdlet. If the URL of the new server differs from the URL of the previous server, you can run the **Update-SPInfoPathAdminFileUri** Windows PowerShell cmdlet to update links that are used in the upgraded form templates.

For more information about how to upgrade forms and form templates, see [Plan to upgrade form templates during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

Excel Services

- Excel Services remains a local service for SharePoint Server 2010 — this means that you need to run the service in the same farm that consumes it.
- For in-place upgrade, any configuration information stored in the SSP database for Excel Services is upgraded and moved into the configuration database. For the database attach upgrade approach, you must reconfigure Excel Services in your new farm.

-
- After upgrade (either in-place or database attach), you must provision a new unattended service account that uses the Secure Store Service to interact with Excel Services.

Business Data Catalog

During an in-place upgrade, data that was stored in the SSP database is moved and upgraded to a separate database. New service applications are created for the SharePoint Server 2010 service. A new service, the Application Registry Backwards-compatible service, is used to manage the old Business Data Catalog connections.

The Business Data Catalog is not upgraded when you use the database attach upgrade method.

For more information, see [Plan to upgrade to Business Connectivity Services \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Single sign-on

The Single Sign-On (SSO) service is being replaced with the Secure Store Service in SharePoint Server 2010. You can use Windows PowerShell cmdlets to upgrade application definitions from SSO to the Secure Store Service. Note that passwords are not upgraded. After you upgrade the application definitions, you can make the Secure Store Service the default SSO provider. For more information, see [Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

About upgrading farms that share services (parent and child farms) (SharePoint Server 2010)

In Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007, it was possible to configure parent farms and child farms to share services. In such an environment, the parent farm hosts one or more Shared Services Providers (SSPs) from which one or more child farms consume services. You can choose one of two approaches to upgrade farms that share services. The recommended approach is to upgrade a duplicate of the parent farm (the farm that hosts the shared services). If you need additional time to complete the upgrade of all farms, you can use a temporary parent farm to upgrade the child farms (the farms that consume shared services) until the original parent farm can be fully upgraded. Both approaches require you to create an additional parent farm: In the first case, this parent farm is a duplicate of the original parent farm that you immediately upgrade; in the second case, this parent farm is a new parent farm built on Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.

When you upgrade parent and child farms, you must perform the upgrade steps in a specific order so that your services (such as Search or User Profile) can continue to work as required. This article describes considerations to keep in mind while you plan to upgrade parent and child server farms, and contains high-level illustrations of the upgrade processes.

Before you begin, make sure that you have reviewed the general upgrade information available in [About the upgrade process \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In this article:

- [About upgrading parent and child farms](#)
- [Considerations for upgrading parent and child farms](#)
- [Process overview: Upgrading a duplicate parent farm](#)
- [Process overview: Upgrading by using a temporary parent farm](#)

Information in this article is also available in a downloadable poster, "[Upgrading Parent and Child Farms](#)" (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=190984>). This Visio diagram is also available in [PDF](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=190985>) or [XPS](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=190986>) format.

About upgrading parent and child farms

The following list describes the two approaches to upgrading parent and child farms, and the advantages of each:

- **Minimal downtime: Duplicate parent farm (recommended)** With this approach, you duplicate and upgrade the original parent farm, and then upgrade each child farm individually. After each

child farm is upgraded, you configure it to consume services from the upgraded parent farm. After all child farms have been upgraded, you can remove the original parent farm.

This approach is optimized for minimal downtime during the upgrade process. Because the original parent farm is still available to host services for any child farms that are not yet upgraded, your users can continue to work with sites on those farms.

- **Child first: Temporary parent farm** With this approach, you create a new parent farm, and then upgrade child farms individually and configure them to consume services from the new parent. After all child farms have been upgraded, you can upgrade or remove the original parent farm.

This approach is optimized for allowing individual child farms to be upgraded over time. Whenever a child farm is ready to be upgraded, it can be upgraded and start to consume services from the new parent farm without affecting the original parent farm or other child farms.

Considerations for upgrading parent and child farms

As you plan for and perform an upgrade for parent and child farms that share services, you must take the following considerations into account:

- Authentication types cannot be changed during upgrade.

Because both parent farms need to be able to crawl the same content, you should not change authentication types until all farms have been upgraded. If you plan to change the authentication type in the upgraded farm, complete the upgrade and then make the change.

- You need to plan to upgrade your services before you begin either type of upgrade.

Search, User Profiles, Business Data Catalog, and other services have specific steps that must be performed before, during, and after upgrade. For more information, see [How upgrade affects search features \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), [How other services are affected by upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), [Plan to upgrade form templates during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#) and [Plan to upgrade to Business Connectivity Services \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

- Child farms that have not been upgraded will not have access to the Web analytics available in SharePoint Server 2010.

This might not matter in the short term, but — depending on how long your farms are in a mixed upgrade state — the data could be skewed because it is split between two analytics systems and will not be combined.

For more information about how to plan your upgrade, see [Plan and prepare for upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Process overview: Upgrading a duplicate parent farm

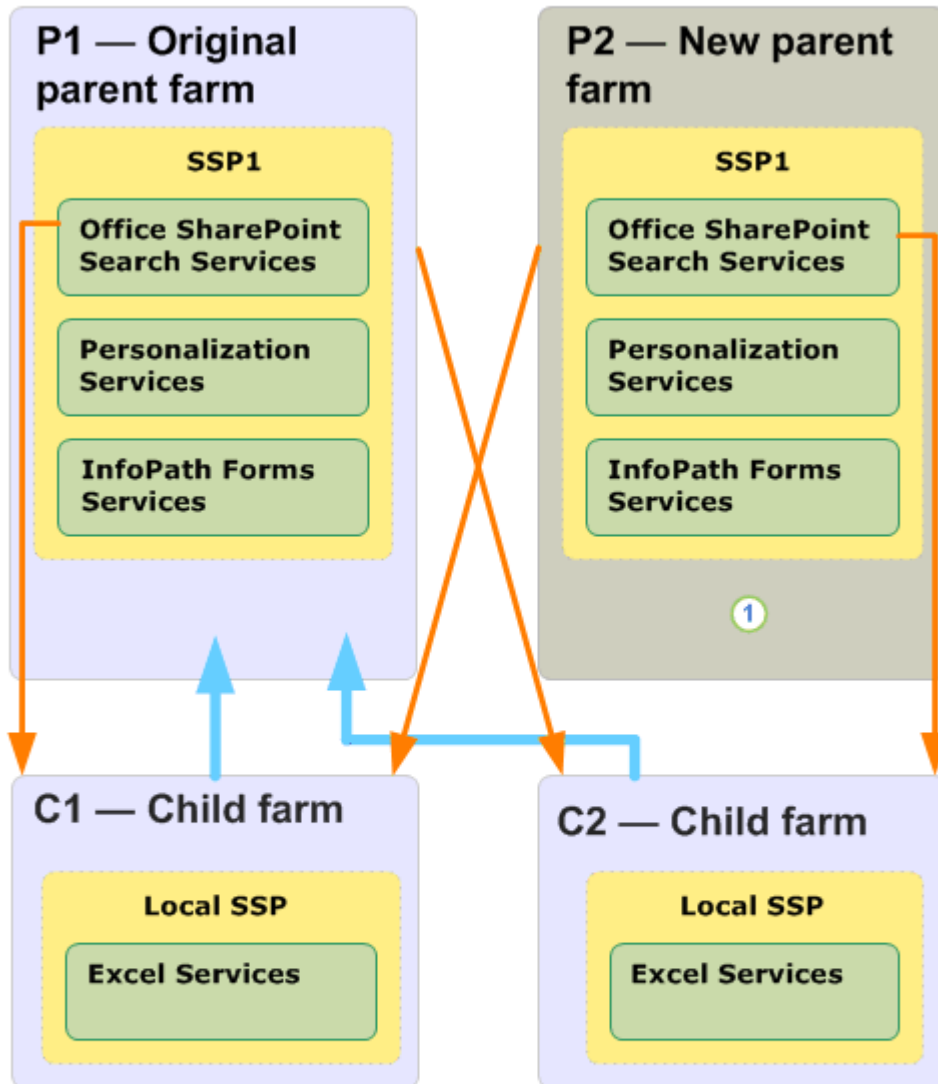
To provide maximum uptime during the upgrade process, you want to keep the original parent farm running until all the child farms have been upgraded to SharePoint Server 2010. However, because a SharePoint Server 2010 farm cannot consume services from a Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm, this

means that you must create another SharePoint Server 2010 farm to provide services to the child farms until the whole environment is upgraded.

In this approach, you duplicate the parent farm, upgrade the duplicate version, and then upgrade the child farms. After upgrade, you continue with the duplicated parent and turn off the original parent farm.

1. Duplicate the original parent farm.
 - a. Back up the original parent farm (Parent Farm 1).
 - b. Restore Parent Farm 1 to a new farm, Parent Farm 2.

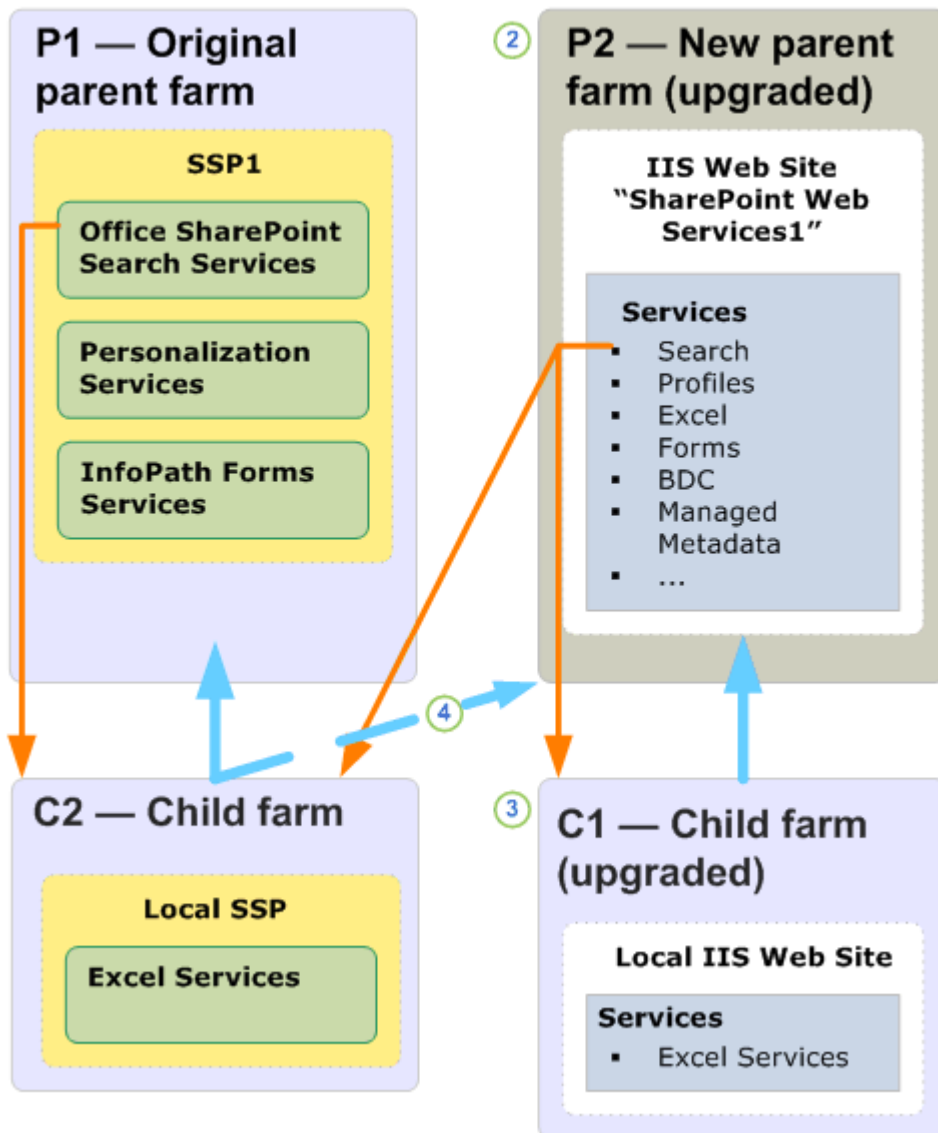
Original farms before upgrade



-
2. Upgrade the new parent farm.
 - a. Upgrade Parent Farm 2 to SharePoint Server 2010.
 - b. Optional: Configure user profile synchronization for Parent Farm 1 and Parent Farm 2.

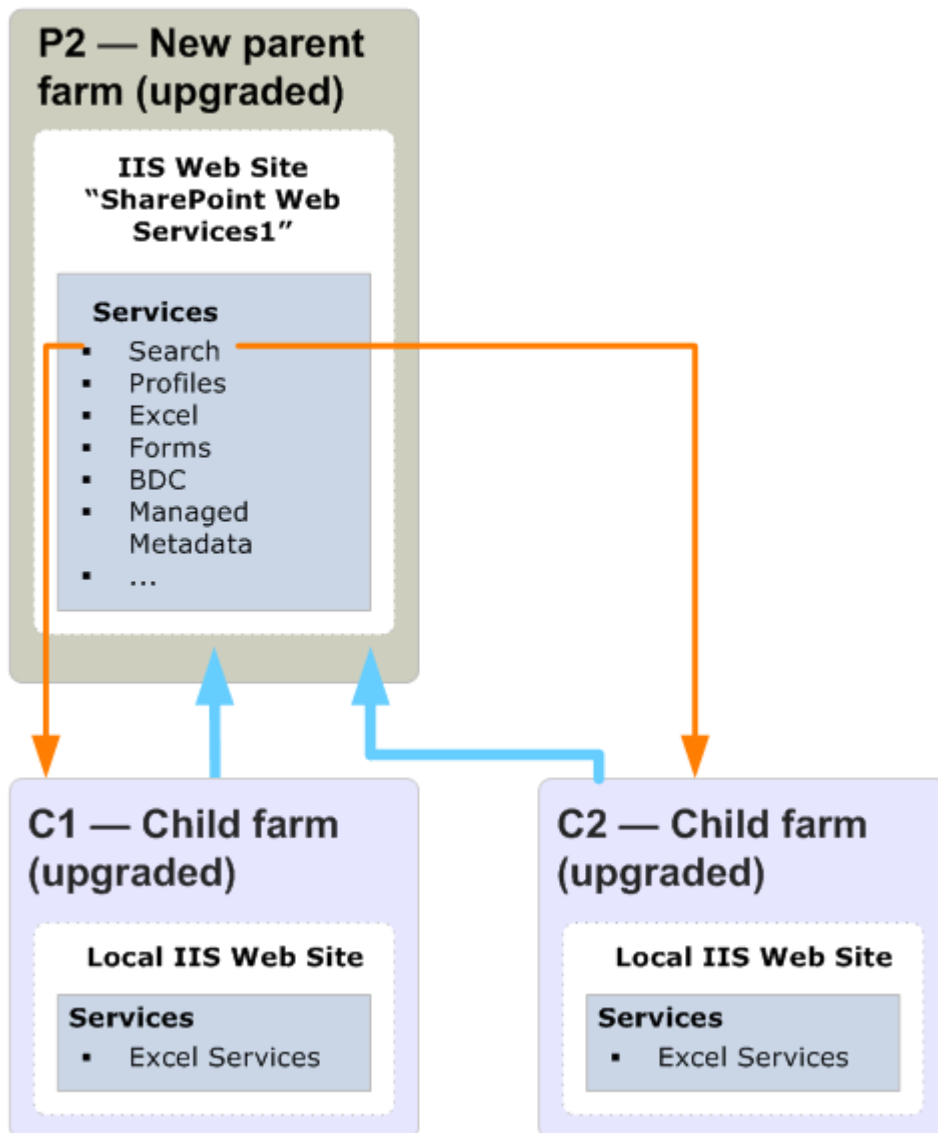
The synchronization steps are optional, but will ensure that the child farms have a smooth experience with minimal loss of services configuration or content as they move from the Office SharePoint Server 2007 parent farm to the SharePoint Server 2010 parent farm. The next version of the Administrative Toolkit will contain a tool called the Profile Replication Engine that you can use to synchronize profiles between Office SharePoint Server 2007 and SharePoint Server 2010.
 3. Publish the service applications that will be used by child farms (at a minimum, these include Search, Business Data Catalog, and User Profiles).
 4. Upgrade the first child farm.
 - a. Upgrade the first child farm, Child Farm 1, to SharePoint Server 2010.
 - b. Ensure that local service applications (such as Excel Services) are configured and working on Child Farm 1.
 - c. Configure Child Farm 1 to start to consume services from Parent Farm 2.

Farms during upgrade



5. Upgrade the remaining child farms.
Repeat step 4 for all remaining child farms in the environment.
6. Remove the original parent farm.

Farms after upgrade

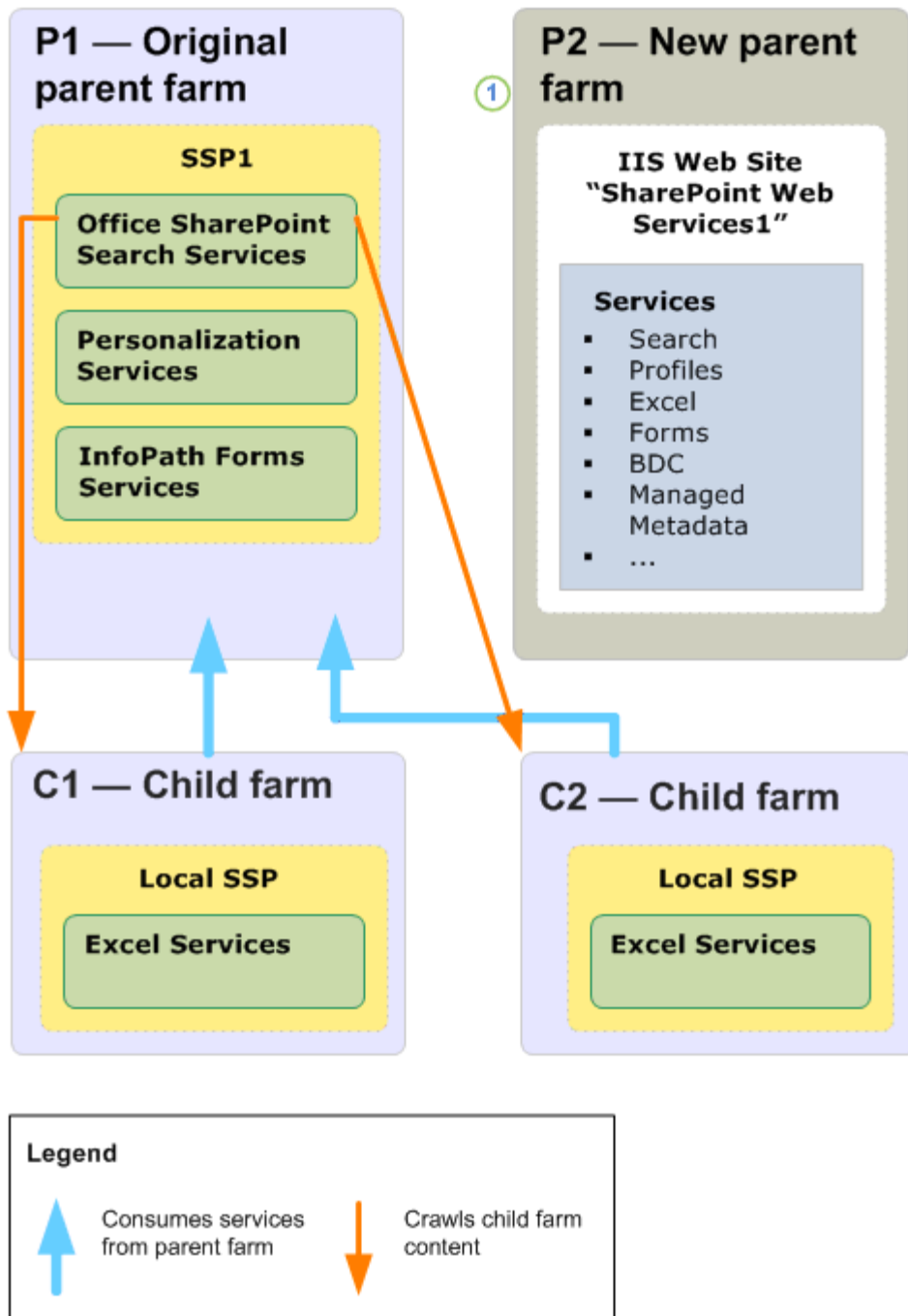


Process overview: Upgrading by using a temporary parent farm

If you need to upgrade a child farm before you are ready to upgrade the parent farm, you can do so by creating a temporary parent farm in SharePoint Server 2010.

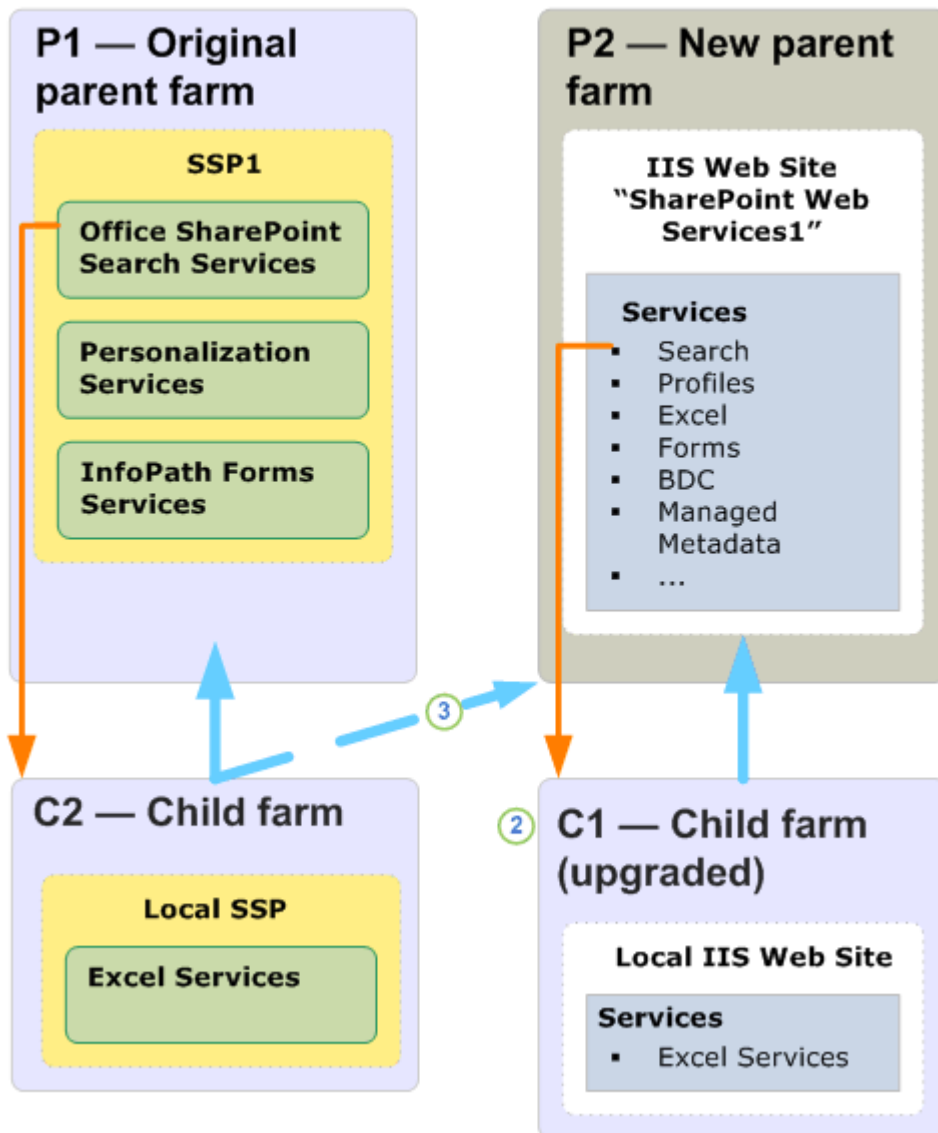
1. Create and configure a new parent farm, Parent Farm 2, in SharePoint Server 2010.

Farms before upgrade



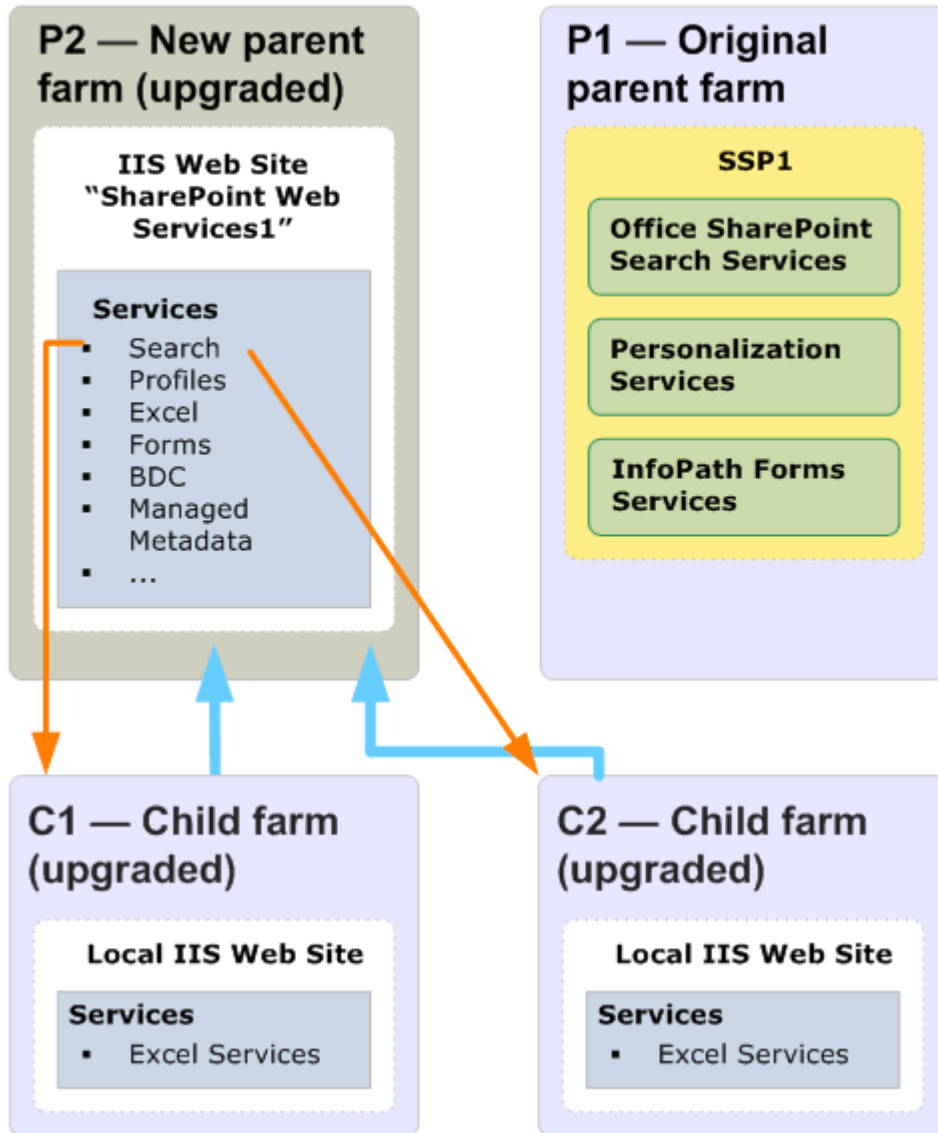
2. Upgrade the first child farm.
 - a. Upgrade the first child farm, Child Farm 1, to SharePoint Server 2010.
 - b. Ensure that local service applications (such as Excel Services) are configured and working on Child Farm 1.
 - c. Configure Child Farm 1 to start consuming services from Parent Farm 2.

Farms during upgrade



3. Upgrade the remaining child farms
Repeat step 2 for all remaining child farms in the environment.
4. Upgrade the original parent farm, Parent Farm 1, in SharePoint Server 2010.
You can either re-associate the child farms with the upgraded Parent Farm 1 after it has been upgraded, or continue to use the new Parent Farm 2 to host services for the child farms.

Farms after upgrade



See Also

[Publish a service application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/46e0f7e7-cd69-41a5-9988-bd0e7db564d9(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/46e0f7e7-cd69-41a5-9988-bd0e7db564d9\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/46e0f7e7-cd69-41a5-9988-bd0e7db564d9(Office.14).aspx))

[Manage service applications \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0a785758-694c-4c5c-abe6-70a17b490c6e(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0a785758-694c-4c5c-abe6-70a17b490c6e\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0a785758-694c-4c5c-abe6-70a17b490c6e(Office.14).aspx))

[User Profile Replication Engine \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc663011(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc663011\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc663011(Office.12).aspx))

Plan and prepare for upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

Now that you have learned how the upgrade process works by reading the articles in [About the upgrade process \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), you can begin your upgrade planning. This section contains articles that help you plan and prepare for upgrading from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.

In this section:

- [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Learn about the different upgrade approaches and choose the one that is best suited to your environment.
- [Review upgrade best practices \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Avoid problems during the upgrade process by following these best practices.
- [Review supported and unsupported upgrade paths \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Understand which topologies, editions, and other products can be upgraded to SharePoint Server 2010.
- [Review system requirements for upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Review the requirements to help ensure that your environment can be upgraded to SharePoint Server 2010.
- [Determine how to handle customizations \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Learn how to identify and evaluate the customizations in your environment, and determine whether you will upgrade them, and how.
- [Create a communication plan \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Create a plan to coordinate and communicate with the upgrade team, site owners and users, and stakeholders.
- [Plan to upgrade to Business Connectivity Services \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Describes how upgrading from the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog to the Microsoft Business Connectivity Services in SharePoint Server 2010 works and provides guidance about how to upgrade various types of solutions that use the Business Data Catalog.
- [Plan to upgrade form templates during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
Find out what to do before, during, and after upgrade to keep your form templates working in the new version.
- [Plan visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Learn about the different visual upgrade options and how to choose the option that best suits your business needs.

A worksheet is available so you can record information about your environment while you prepare for upgrade. Download the worksheet from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928> (*http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928*).

Determine upgrade approach (SharePoint Server 2010)

Before you run any process to upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you have to determine which upgrade approach to take. Use the information in this article to help compare the pros and cons for each approach and to review information about special cases that might influence your approach.

In addition to the information in this article, be sure to read [Review supported and unsupported upgrade paths \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) to understand exactly which upgrade situations are valid and lead to successful upgrades.



Note:

To perform an upgrade, you must have installed Office SharePoint Server 2007 with Service Pack 2 (SP2).

In this article:

- [Choose an upgrade approach](#)
- [Special cases](#)

Choose an upgrade approach

There are two basic approaches to upgrade: in-place and database attach. In addition, there are various techniques you can use to combine aspects of these basic approaches to mitigate downtime or potentially improve performance.

The following table compares the in-place and database attach approaches.

| Approach | Description | Pros | Cons |
|------------------|--|--|--|
| In-place upgrade | You can install SharePoint Server 2010 on the same hardware. You can also upgrade the content and settings in the server farm as part of a single process. | Farm-wide settings are preserved and upgraded. Customizations are available in the environment after the upgrade, although manual steps may be required to upgrade or rework them. | Servers and farms are offline while the upgrade is in progress. The upgrade proceeds continuously. Consequently, you must allocate enough time for all content to be upgraded in sequence. |

| Approach | Description | Pros | Cons |
|-------------------------|---|---|---|
| Database attach upgrade | You can upgrade the content for the environment on a separate farm. The result is that you do not upgrade any of the services or farm settings. You can upgrade the databases in any order and upgrade several databases at the same time. While each database is being upgraded, the content in that database is not available to users. | You can upgrade multiple content databases at the same time, which results in faster upgrade times overall than an in-place upgrade. You can use a database attach upgrade to combine multiple farms into one farm. | The server and farm settings are not upgraded. You must manually transfer settings that you want to preserve from the old farm to the new farm. Any customizations must also be transferred to the new farm manually. Any missing customizations may cause unintended losses of functionality or user experience issues. Copying databases over a network takes time and bandwidth. You must plan for that. You need direct access to the database servers. |

For more information about how in-place and database attach upgrades work, see [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

The following table lists the downtime mitigation techniques that you can use during upgrade to reduce the amount of time that users cannot access their content or to potentially increase upgrade performance.

| Technique | Description | Pros | Cons |
|------------------|--|--|---|
| Parallel upgrade | You can attach and upgrade multiple databases at a time to speed up the upgrade process overall. The maximum number of parallel upgrades depends on your hardware. This technique works for either in-place or database attach upgrades. | Faster upgrade times for your overall environment. | This is a manual process that requires additional steps and monitoring. |

| Technique | Description | Pros | Cons |
|---|---|--|--|
| Hybrid approach 1: Database attach with read-only databases | Lets you continue to provide read-only access to content during the upgrade process. For this approach, you set the databases to read-only while the upgrade is in progress on another farm. This method reduces perceived downtime for your users. | <p>The existing farm can continue to host non-upgraded sites (in read-only mode) while you upgrade the content. As a result, there is minimal downtime for users.</p> <p>You can upgrade multiple content databases at the same time, which results in faster upgrade times overall than an in-place upgrade.</p> <p>You can upgrade hardware in addition to software.</p> | <p>The server and farm settings are not upgraded. You must manually transfer settings that you want to preserve from the old farm to the new farm.</p> <p>Any customizations must also be transferred and upgraded manually. Any missing customizations may cause unintended losses of functionality or user experience issues.</p> <p>Copying databases over a network takes time and bandwidth. You must plan for that.</p> <p>You need direct access to the database servers.</p> |
| Hybrid approach 2: In-place upgrade with detached databases | Lets you take advantage of an in-place upgrade's ability to upgrade content and settings, while adding the speed of a database attach upgrade. For this approach, you use an in-place upgrade to upgrade the farm and settings, and to detach and upgrade multiple databases in parallel (on the same farm or a separate farm). | <p>Farmwide settings can be preserved and upgraded.</p> <p>Customizations are available in the environment after upgrade, although manual steps may be required to upgrade or rework them.</p> <p>You can upgrade multiple content databases at the same time, which results in faster upgrade times overall than an in-place upgrade.</p> | <p>Copying databases over a network takes time and bandwidth. You must plan for that.</p> <p>You need direct access to the database servers.</p> |


Be aware that you can also combine these techniques. For example, you can set your original farm to read-only mode, create a copy of the farm and upgrade it without the content databases, use parallel upgrade to rapidly upgrade all the user content, and then finally switch users to the new farm after upgrade is completed. For more information about these downtime mitigation techniques work, see [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).



Another option to consider if you are facing an overly long outage window is to use Alternate Access Mapping URL Redirection with a database attach approach, so that you temporarily redirect users to an existing farm while you upgrade the content on a new farm. This is an advanced method and should not be used unless other downtime mitigation techniques are not sufficient. For more information, see [Using AAM URL redirection as part of the upgrade process \(SharePoint Server 2010\) \(white paper\)](#).

Special cases

You might have other requirements or additional goals that you want to achieve when you perform an upgrade. The following table lists special cases and describes which upgrade approach is appropriate for each case.

| Case | Upgrade approach |
|--|---|
| Upgrading from a 32-bit to a 64-bit edition of SQL Server? | <p>If you are running a 32-bit edition of SQL Server, you must migrate to a 64-bit edition. We recommend that you perform this migration before you upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010 to ensure best performance benefits. Ensure that you perform only one kind of upgrade or migration at a time to avoid upgrade failure. For more information, see Migrate an existing server farm to a 64-bit environment (Office SharePoint Server 2007) (http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd622865(Office.12).aspx).</p> <p>The following are two options for upgrading from a 32-bit to a 64-bit edition of SQL Server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You can back up the whole set of databases for the farm, perform the upgrade, and then restore the databases. (This option is supported and recommended because you will have a full backup, and after you restore the databases, you do not have to change anything within SharePoint Server 2010). • You can move the SQL Server databases that you want to upgrade to a different 64-bit edition of SQL Server. You must add the different 64-bit edition, and then run a command to the computers running SharePoint Server 2010 to point them to the new 64-bit edition of SQL Server. (This option is supported but not recommended because it requires more work in SharePoint Server 2010 when, for example, the databases change location). |

| Case | Upgrade approach |
|--|--|
| |  Note: If you upgrade a SQL Server version — for example, from SQL Server 2005 SP2 to SQL Server 2008 — you can perform this upgrade before, during, or after you upgrade from a 32-bit to a 64-bit edition of SQL Server. |
| Upgrading from a 32-bit operating system to a 64-bit operating system? | If you are using a 32-bit operating system, you must migrate to a 64-bit operating system before you upgrade. For more information, see Migrate an existing server farm to a 64-bit environment (Office SharePoint Server 2007) (http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd622865(Office.12).aspx). |
| Upgrading an environment that uses forms-based authentication? | Additional steps are required to upgrade when you are using forms-based authentication. For more information, see Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application (SharePoint Server 2010) . |
| Upgrading very large databases? | In general, very large databases — particularly databases that have a large number or large size of document versions inside them — take longer to upgrade than smaller databases. However, the complexity of the data determines how long it takes to upgrade, not the size of the database itself. If the upgrade process times out, it is usually because of connection issues. In Office SharePoint Server 2007, the upgrade process often timed out because of the time needed to execute a process, but this is rarely the case with SharePoint Server 2010. For more information about how long upgrade might take for your environment, see Estimate how long the upgrade process will take and the space that you need (SharePoint Server 2010) . |
| Upgrading databases with a large number of site collections? | If you have 5,000 or more site collections in a database, consider breaking them out into multiple databases. In Office SharePoint Server 2007, there was a default warning at 9,000 site collections and a hard limit at 15,000 site collections. In SharePoint Server 2010, these values change to 2,000 site collections for the warning and 5,000 site collections for the limit. To avoid errors during upgrade or broken sites after upgrade, we recommend that you move some site collections into separate databases. If you have multiple content databases, you can also speed up your upgrade process by upgrading multiple databases in parallel. For more information about site collection limits, see SharePoint Server 2010 capacity management: Software boundaries and limits (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6a13cd9f-4b44-40d6-85aa-c70a8e5c34fe(Office.14).aspx). For more information about moving site collections to a new database, see Move site collections to a new database (split a content database) (Office SharePoint Server 2007) (http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc825328(office.12).aspx). |

| Case | Upgrade approach |
|--|--|
| Upgrading from SharePoint Portal Server 2003? | Use a database attach upgrade method to upgrade to Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007, and then upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010. For more information about this upgrade process, see Upgrading from SharePoint Portal Server 2003 to SharePoint Server 2010 . |
| Upgrading from Windows SharePoint Services 3.0? | Use the database attach upgrade approach to attach and upgrade the content databases from Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 to SharePoint Server 2010. This process upgrades the data in the content databases, but does not transfer any farm settings. |
| Upgrading Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010 | <p>Office Forms Server 2007 is no longer available for purchase. However, the capabilities of Office Forms Server 2007 have been integrated into SharePoint Server 2010. If you want to use forms, you must upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010 by using a database attach upgrade method. For more information, see Perform a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010 and Plan to upgrade form templates during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010.</p> <p> Note: Before you upgrade Office Forms Server 2007, ensure that you have installed The 2007 Microsoft Office Servers Service Pack 2 (SP2) (http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=192132).</p> |
| Changing languages? | <p>You have two choices, depending on whether a single site or your entire environment is changing languages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To change the language for a specific site, upgrade in the same language, and then install the new language pack and change to that language. <p> Caution</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You must have the appropriate language packs installed to upgrade any sites based on a localized site definition. If you do not have the new language pack, the sites will not be accessible. Wait for the new language packs to be released before attempting to upgrade those sites. • Also, you must have any language packs you used for Office SharePoint Server 2007 installed before you can perform an in-place upgrade. • To change the installation language for your servers, use the database migration approach to migrate your data from the old version and language to the new version and language. |
| Using internationalized | Although Office SharePoint Server 2007 supported internationalized domain names (IDNs), SharePoint Server 2010 does not. If you currently use IDNs with |

| Case | Upgrade approach |
|---------------|---|
| domain names? | <p>Office SharePoint Server 2007 and you plan to upgrade or migrate to SharePoint Server 2010, you must stop using IDNs, delete any IDN settings, and set up a non-IDN environment before doing so. For more information, see Plan for multilingual sites (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/22d5dc9c-66bd-40d7-8c60-2a2a066db224(Office.14).aspx).</p> |

Review upgrade best practices (SharePoint Server 2010)

To ensure a smooth upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, follow these best practices:

1. Update your servers to Service Pack 2 (SP2) of Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 or later.
Your environment must be updated to Service Pack 2 of Office SharePoint Server 2007 to run the upgrade process, either for an in-place or database attach upgrade. We recommend that you install the October 2009 Cumulative Update because it includes improvements to the pre-upgrade checker tool. For more information about how to install service packs and updates, see the [Updates Resource Center for SharePoint Products and Technologies](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/bb735839.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/bb735839.aspx>). For a list of all available updates, see [Update Center for Microsoft Office, Office Servers, and Related Products](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/ee748587.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/ee748587.aspx>).
2. Ensure that the environment is fully functioning before you perform an upgrade.
An upgrade does not solve any problems that might already exist in your environment. Therefore, ensure that the environment is fully functioning before you perform an upgrade. For example, if you have Web applications that are no longer being used, unextend them before you upgrade. If you want to delete a Web application in Internet Information Services (IIS), unextend the Web application before you delete it; otherwise, SharePoint Server 2010 will try to upgrade the Web application even though it does not exist, and the upgrade will fail. If you find and solve problems beforehand, you are more likely to meet the upgrade schedule that you have estimated.
3. Before you try an in-place upgrade, migrate to 64-bit servers. Upgrade your operating system to a 64-bit version of Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2008 with Service Pack 2 (SP2). If you are using SQL Server, upgrade or migrate to a 64-bit version of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 with Service Pack 1 (SP1) and Cumulative Update 2, or SQL Server 2005 with SP3 and Cumulative Update 3.
Do not try to combine these operations with your upgrade process. You cannot perform an in-place upgrade unless your system already runs on a supported operating system and platform. For more information, see [What's new in upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
4. Run the pre-upgrade checker to look for potential issues.
The pre-upgrade checker reports missing customizations and issues with orphaned sites, and more, so that you can address these issues before you perform your upgrade. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
5. Perform a trial upgrade on a test farm first.
Back up the live farm, restore to test servers, and then perform the upgrade. Examine the results to set expectations for what the live upgraded sites will look like, to determine how much post-upgrade

customization will have to be done, and to estimate how long the upgrade will take. Try a full search indexing crawl. For more information, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

6. Plan for capacity.

Ensure that you have disk, processor, and memory capacity sufficient to handle upgrade requirements. For more information about system requirements, see [Review system requirements for upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). For more information about how to plan the disk space that is required for upgrade, see [Estimate how long the upgrade process will take and the space that you need \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). For more information about how to plan for capacity, see [Performance and capacity management \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/8dd52916-f77d-4444-b593-1f7d6f330e5f\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/8dd52916-f77d-4444-b593-1f7d6f330e5f(Office.14).aspx)).

7. Back up your environment.

Perform a full backup of your environment before upgrading. That way, you can recover your environment if you must roll back from an upgrade. For more information, see [Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6a13cd9f-4b44-40d6-85aa-c70a8e5c34fe\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6a13cd9f-4b44-40d6-85aa-c70a8e5c34fe(Office.14).aspx)).

8. Optimize your environment before upgrade.

A few key limits have changed in SharePoint Server 2010, such as query throttling on large lists and lower limits on the number of site collections allowed per content database (from 5,000 warning and 15,000 limit to 2,000 warning and 5,000 limit). Be sure to optimize your Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment to meet these limits or restrictions before upgrade to mitigate errors during the upgrade process or broken lists or sites after upgrade. For more information about the site collection limit, see [SharePoint Server 2010 capacity management: Software boundaries and limits](#). For more information about large lists and addressing the lower limit on site collections, see [Cleaning up your environment before upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

9. (Optional) If you are using the database attach upgrade method, set the original databases to read-only.

If you expect a long outage window while you perform a database attach upgrade, you can set the databases in the original environment to be read-only so that users can continue to access their data without changing it. For more information, see [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

10. Do not add any servers to your server farm after you begin the upgrade process.

Running the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard upgrades the configuration database. The configuration database contains the list of servers in the farm. Servers added to the farm after the configuration wizard has been run are not included in the database. Therefore, servers added after the wizard runs do not appear in the upgraded version topology. If you need to add servers to your farm, do so either before you start the upgrade or after you have completed the upgrade process.

11. After upgrade, review the Upgrade Status page and upgrade logs to determine whether there are issues that must be addressed. Then review the upgraded sites.

The Upgrade Status page reports on the upgrade progress, and the upgrade logs list any errors or warnings that occurred during the upgrade process. You should verify all of the sites and test them before you consider the upgrade complete. For more information, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Review supported and unsupported upgrade paths (SharePoint Server 2010)

When you plan your upgrade process, make sure that you verify that the upgrade path you want to pursue is supported. This article describes supported and unsupported upgrade paths for an in-place upgrade, and covers which specific topologies, editions, and products can be upgraded in place to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.

In this article:

- [Review supported topologies for upgrade](#)
- [Supported editions for upgrade](#)
- [Supported cross-product upgrades](#)

Review supported topologies for upgrade

When you upgrade, you must upgrade to the same kind of installation: stand-alone to stand-alone, or server farm to server farm. You cannot migrate from stand-alone to farm or vice versa during an in-place upgrade process. However, either before or after you upgrade, you can change the size and scale of a server farm to suit your requirements. Or, if you perform a database attach upgrade, you can attach the databases to a different installation type.

Physical topology guidance

The Microsoft SQL Server topology — in addition to your network, physical storage, and caching — can significantly affect system performance. In planning your hardware, remember that for in-place upgrade, the server or server farm that you upgrade must be running a 64-bit version of Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows Server 2008 with Service Pack 2 (SP2). For server farms, you must also be running a 64-bit version of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 with Service Pack 1 (SP1) and Cumulative Update 2, or SQL Server 2005 with SP3 and Cumulative Update 3.

To learn more about mapping your solution design to the farm size and hardware that will support your business goals, see [Performance and capacity management \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/8dd52916-f77d-4444-b593-1f7d6f330e5f\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/8dd52916-f77d-4444-b593-1f7d6f330e5f(Office.14).aspx)). For more information about upgrade requirements, see [Review system requirements for upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Supported topologies

The following table lists the supported starting topologies in Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007, and the supported and unsupported ending topologies when you upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010.

| Starting topology (Office SharePoint Server 2007) | Supported ending topology (SharePoint Server 2010) | Unsupported ending topology (SharePoint Server 2010) |
|---|---|---|
| Stand-alone server with SQL Server 2005 Express Edition | Stand-alone server with Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Express | Any farm |
| Single server with SQL Server | Single server with SQL Server | Stand-alone server with Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Express |
| Any size farm | Any size farm | Stand-alone server with Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Express |

Migrating from a stand-alone server to a server farm

If you want to change from a stand-alone server to a server farm, you can do so before you upgrade. To migrate from a stand-alone server to a server farm configuration, you must first create a new farm, and then move the databases from the stand-alone server to the server farm. For more information, see [Migrate a stand-alone installation to a server farm installation \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](#). After you have migrated, you can perform your upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010.

Migrating from 32-bit hardware

You cannot upgrade in-place from Office SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010 if you are on 32-bit hardware. If you start in 32-bit, you must first migrate to 64-bit hardware. For more information, see [Migrate an existing server farm to a 64-bit environment \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd622865\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd622865(Office.12).aspx)).

Supported editions for upgrade

The following table lists the editions available for Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 and the supported and unsupported ending editions when you upgrade in place to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.

| Starting edition | Supported ending edition | Unsupported ending edition |
|--|--|--|
| Office SharePoint Server 2007 with SP2, Standard edition | SharePoint Server 2010, Standard edition | SharePoint Server 2010, Enterprise edition |

| Starting edition | Supported ending edition | Unsupported ending edition |
|--|--|--|
| SharePoint Server 2010, Standard edition | SharePoint Server 2010, Enterprise edition | |
| Office SharePoint Server 2007 with SP2, Enterprise Edition | SharePoint Server 2010, Enterprise edition | SharePoint Server 2010, Standard edition |
| Office SharePoint Server 2007 with SP2, Trial edition | SharePoint Server 2010, Trial edition | SharePoint Server 2010, full product |
| SharePoint Server 2010, Trial edition | SharePoint Server 2010, full product | |

Supported cross-product upgrades

The following table lists which Microsoft server products can be upgraded in place to Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010 or SharePoint Server 2010.

| Starting product | Supported ending products | Unsupported ending product |
|--|--|--|
| Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 with SP2 | Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010 SharePoint Server 2010 (by using database attach upgrade only) | SharePoint Server 2010 (by using in-place upgrade) |
| SharePoint Foundation 2010 | SharePoint Server 2010 | |
| Microsoft Search Server 2008 | SharePoint Server 2010 or Microsoft Search Server 2010 | SharePoint Foundation 2010 |
| Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 | SharePoint Server 2010 | SharePoint Foundation 2010 |
| Microsoft Office PerformancePoint Server 2007 | SharePoint Server 2010 | |
| Microsoft Office Project Server 2007 with Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 with SP2 or Office SharePoint Server 2007 with SP2 | SharePoint Server 2010, Enterprise Edition plus Microsoft Project 2010 | SharePoint Foundation 2010 plus Project 2010 |

Review system requirements for upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

Before you can upgrade your environment from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, your servers must meet the following minimum requirements:

- The hardware and software must meet or exceed the minimum system requirements to run the new version.

This includes the requirement for 64-bit hardware and 64-bit versions of the operating system and Microsoft SQL Server. Before you begin the upgrade process, make sure that your system meets or exceeds the minimum requirements in [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)). Before upgrading, determine how much production capacity you have to have in your upgraded environment and identify the hardware that you must have for your upgrade based on that information. For more information, see [Performance and capacity management \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/8dd52916-f77d-4444-b593-1f7d6f330e5f(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/8dd52916-f77d-4444-b593-1f7d6f330e5f\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/8dd52916-f77d-4444-b593-1f7d6f330e5f(Office.14).aspx)).

- Office SharePoint Server 2007 must be updated to Service Pack 2

Your environment must be updated to at least Service Pack 2 of Office SharePoint Server 2007 to run the upgrade process, either for an in-place or database attach upgrade. We recommend that you install the October 2009 Cumulative Update because it includes improvements to the pre-upgrade checker tool. For more information about how to install service packs and updates, see the [Updates Resource Center for SharePoint Products and Technologies](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/bb735839.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/bb735839.aspx>). For a list of all available updates, see [Update Center for Microsoft Office, Office Servers, and Related Products](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/ee748587.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/ee748587.aspx>).

About these requirements

It is important that your hardware meet at least the minimum requirements that are listed in the article [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)

([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)); otherwise, you might encounter issues during the upgrade process. For example, if your database server has insufficient memory or processor power, it may be unable to keep up with the number of transactions that occur during the upgrade process, and the upgrade may fail.

We recommend that you use a trial upgrade to determine exactly what hardware capacity you must have for an acceptable upgrade experience. For more information, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). If you experience capacity problems with your hardware

during the trial upgrade, you can increase the capacity and repeat the upgrade until you are satisfied that you have found the optimal level of upgrade performance.



Important:

It is important to track the following three resource components for a server that is running SQL Server: CPU, memory, and I/O subsystem. When one or more of these components seems to have reached capacity, analyze the appropriate strategy based on the current and projected work load, and determine whether to add more resources or to scale out to a new server that is running SQL Server. In general, we recommend that you consider scaling out, in addition to adding more resources.

Determine how to handle customizations (SharePoint Server 2010)

If you have extensively customized your sites based on Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007, you must determine how you want to handle your customized sites when you upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. Your approach will vary based on the extent of the customizations, the kind of customization, the complexity of your site, and your goals for upgrading. Before you upgrade, you must identify and then evaluate the customizations in your environment and determine whether you will upgrade them, and how.

In this article:

- [Identify customizations in your environment](#)
- [Evaluate the customizations](#)
- [Considerations for specific customizations](#)
- [Ensure that future customizations follow best practices](#)

Identify customizations in your environment

As part of your upgrade testing process, you should create an inventory of the server-side customizations in your environment (solutions, features, Web Parts, event handlers, master pages, page layouts, CSS files, and so on). For more information about how to identify customizations, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). You can use the Upgrade Planning worksheet to list specific customizations and then record the results of your evaluation in the next section. Download the worksheet from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928> (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928>).

Evaluate the customizations

After you have identified the customizations, you can decide what to do about them. The following questions can help you evaluate the customizations:

- Is the customization still valuable?
 - Does it serve a useful business need?
 - Is it widely deployed and used?
- Is the customization well-designed?
 - Is it built on supported, predefined site definitions?
 - Does it follow best practices for customizations?
 - Is it a supported kind of customization, or does it introduce risk into your environment?

As you evaluate each individual customization, you can also think about your overall approach for customizations. You can choose from among these options:

1. **Keep the customizations** Use Visual Upgrade to continue to use the previous version's user experience for specific sites. Although you can use this approach to keep the same functionality, you will not be able to take advantage of the new visuals — such as the Fluent user interface (UI), also called the ribbon — and capabilities that are available in the new version.
2. **Replace or redo the customizations** If you want to use new functionality, plan to redesign your sites, or are significantly changing the information architecture, the upgrade is your opportunity to start over with new features, a new look, or a new organization. When you replace or redo customizations, you can take advantage of the new capabilities, modify your design slightly if you want, or move to a more manageable design.

For more information about redoing and redeploying solutions, see [Redeploying Customizations and Solutions in SharePoint Foundation 2010 and SharePoint Server 2010](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182335) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182335>).

3. **Discard the customizations** Replace the customizations by using default functionality. You can reset pages to the default site definitions and remove any Web Parts or features that you no longer want to support. If you decide to discard any customizations, you must fix any issues that result from removing the customizations in the sites that used them. You can use your customizations inventory to determine which sites require this kind of attention before or after upgrade.

Considerations for specific customizations

In addition to your overall decision about how to treat customizations in your environment during upgrade, you must examine specific types of customizations to determine whether you must perform any additional actions to make them work in the upgraded environment.

The following table lists some common customizations and a recommendation for addressing that kind of customization.

| Customization type | Recommendation |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Site templates (.stp files) | <p>Site templates (.stp files) are a deprecated feature in SharePoint Server 2010. New site templates in SharePoint Server 2010 are saved as .wsp files (solution packages).</p> <p>A site that was provisioned by using a site template will be upgraded, but you will be unable to create new sites that are based on that template. If you want to be able to create new sites, you can create and deploy a solution package instead. For more information, see Troubleshoot upgrade issues (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> |

| Customization type | Recommendation |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Site definition | <p>Migrate sites to a supported, predefined site definition, then apply custom features by using solution deployment.</p> <p>You can also continue to use a custom site definition. You do not have to create a new site definition that is based on SharePoint Server 2010.</p> <p>However, if you must perform custom upgrade actions for the definition, you might have to create an upgrade definition file for that site definition. For more information, see Upgrade Definition Files (http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182339) on MSDN.</p> |
| "Fabulous 40" application templates | <p>Microsoft is not creating new versions of these templates. Sites that are based on these templates can be upgraded, but make sure that you test each site before you upgrade the production environment. For more information, see Troubleshoot upgrade issues (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> |
| Feature | <p>Evaluate, then redesign or redeploy if necessary.</p> |
| Workflows and server controls | <p>Depends on the solution. Contact the vendor to find out whether there is an updated solution. If a workflow is compatible with the new version, redeploy.</p> |
| Event handler | <p>Rewrite and redeploy as a feature.</p> |
| Managed paths (inclusions/exclusions) | <p>Re-create inclusions for a database attach upgrade. Exclusions are assumed and do not have to be re-created.</p> |
| Themes | <p>Because of the extensive changes to the UI, custom themes that are based on Office SharePoint Server 2007 will not work in SharePoint Server 2010. Use Visual Upgrade to continue to use the sites in the old user experience until you can create and apply a new theme that is based on SharePoint Server 2010.</p> |
| Toolbar actions | <p>Move to the ribbon (Fluent UI).</p> |
| Master pages and CSS files | <p>Rework to accommodate the new user experience.</p> |
| JavaScript | <p>Test to determine whether any actions are required. In some cases, you might have to adjust the scripts to work with the new page model. Verify that it works on an upgraded site, and in both Visual Upgrade modes.</p> |
| Search provider or security trimmer | <p>Test to determine whether any actions are required.</p> |
| Web Parts | <p>Test to determine whether any actions are required. You might have to adjust the Web Parts to work with strict XHTML mode.</p> <p>If a Web Part is located on a page but not in a Web Part Zone (so that it</p> |

| Customization type | Recommendation |
|--------------------------|---|
| | is, basically, HTML code embedded directly in a page), it will not work if you revert the page to the default template. |
| Services | Test to determine whether any actions are required. Redesign or adjust code, as needed. |
| Authentication providers | Test to determine whether any actions are required. Redeploy the provider on a test farm and ensure that it works correctly with claims authentication. |

The following kinds of customizations are not supported. If you have any of these customizations in your environment, you must replace them by using a supported kind of customization before you can upgrade. Otherwise, you might experience upgrade issues that cannot be fixed:

- Predefined files, features, or site definitions that have been modified.

 **Warning:**

Some predefined file types — such as document icons or actions — can be modified and although they will not be upgraded, their changes can be carried forward in a supportable way. Modifications to other predefined files, such as server-side ASPX pages, will be lost during upgrade if you revert to the site template. Depending on the files that have been changed and the extent of these changes, the upgrade experience can vary significantly. The best practice is to revert all changes in all files on the disk.

- SharePoint databases that have been modified, either by directly changing data or changing the schema, including adding or removing triggers, tables, views, or indexes.

If you have any of these kinds of customizations, remove them and replace them with supported customizations before you attempt to upgrade. This is a best practice for helping to ensure that not only your current upgrade will work, but any future upgrades will go more smoothly. Changing predefined files and databases will remain unsupported.

Ensure that future customizations follow best practices

Ensure that your environment performs well and follows best practices. Deploy only those customizations that follow the best practices described in the following articles on MSDN and TechNet:

- [Best Practices: Using Disposable Windows SharePoint Services Objects](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=105945&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=105945&clcid=0x409>).
- [Development Tools and Techniques for Working with Code in Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 \(Part 1 of 2\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=101494&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=101494&clcid=0x409>).

-
- [Best Practices: Common Coding Issues When Using the SharePoint Object Model](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=105946&clcid=0x409)
(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=105946&clcid=0x409>).
 - [SharePoint Products and Technologies customization policy](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=105947&clcid=0x409)
(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=105947&clcid=0x409>).

Create a communication plan (SharePoint Server 2010)

It is important that you communicate with your users during the upgrade process from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. Site users need to know what to expect when they visit their sites again after upgrade, and site owners need to know how they can help prepare for upgrade and what they will have to do after upgrade. Both site users and site owners need to know when the upgrade will occur. As part of the planning process, determine the following:

- Who are the members of your upgrade team, what other stakeholders are involved, and who will be affected by the upgrade.
- What information must the upgrade team have, and when.
- What information must site users and other stakeholders have, and when.

This article describes how to create your communication plan so that your upgrade team, your stakeholders, and your users know what to expect before, during, and after the upgrade.

In this article:

- [Who is on the upgrade team?](#)
- [When and what to communicate to the upgrade team](#)
- [When and what to communicate to site users](#)

Who is on the upgrade team?

For small deployments in which sites have not been customized to any great degree, the upgrade team might consist of only one person. For larger deployments, on the other hand, several people with different roles can be required, as described in the following list:

- **Server administrators** The server administrator performs most of the upgrade tasks. There must be at least one server administrator on the upgrade team because running the Setup wizard requires someone who is a member of the local Administrators group on each front-end Web server.



Note:

Farm administrators might not be local administrators for the server.

- **Database administrators** If you have a separate database administration team, you must coordinate with them to schedule the upgrade and perform the upgrade, especially if you plan to use the database attach upgrade method.
- **Server security teams** You must coordinate with your security teams, such as the Active Directory directory services team, to verify accounts and permissions or to take advantage of the new policy settings you can apply for SharePoint Server 2010.

-
- **Client deployment team** Communicate with client deployment teams to coordinate deployments of new client and server applications. Client deployment might have to occur before you upgrade, or it could be an option available to users after their sites have been upgraded.
 - **Services administrators** For Office SharePoint Server 2007, you must communicate with the administrators for shared services, such as the Search service, to make sure that they are ready for the upgrade and they can configure the appropriate settings in the new version.
 - **Site collection owners** You must notify site collection owners when the upgrade process is about to occur, and warn them about any issues that you find when you run the pre-upgrade checker or when you upgrade their sites. If you are using Visual Upgrade, you must also communicate with site collection owners about the change to the new user interface and whether the farm administrators or site collection administrators will be completing that change.
 - **Site designers and developers** If you have custom templates, Web Parts, Web services, or other custom elements associated with your sites, you must work with the people responsible for developing or customizing those elements to ensure that you can create new versions of these custom elements or verify that these elements have been upgraded correctly. For more information about potential issues with custom elements, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
 - **Site users** Although you do not have to include site users in making decisions about the upgrade process, you must tell site users when it will happen and what they should expect.
 - **Sponsors and other stakeholders** You might have other people in your organization involved in the upgrade planning process. Make sure that you include them in your communication plan appropriately.



Note:

An upgrade team can include one or more members in each role, depending on your organization.

When and what to communicate to the upgrade team

In general, the server administrators and shared services administrators set the timeline for upgrade, and site owners are notified only when the process is about to begin. However, because team members have their own tasks to perform at particular points in the overall upgrade process, it is critical that you have a solid plan to communicate the progress of the upgrade to all team members so that everyone knows when it is time to perform their particular tasks.

The whole upgrade team needs to work together to determine the following:

- **The upgrade approach to use** The [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) article contains information to help you decide which kind of upgrade to perform. The report generated by the pre-upgrade checker is also important to consider when you make this decision.
- **Dates and times to perform the upgrade** We recommend (especially for an in-place upgrade) that you upgrade when site usage is low. For small single-server deployments, upgrade may be completed in less than a day. For larger deployments, such as server farms with large amounts of

data, the database attach upgrade method or the in-place upgrade with detached databases method can be used to distribute the upgrade process over several outage windows. There is no way to determine the precise length of time that will be required to upgrade any particular site collection. Because of this, it is very important to communicate with other team members involved in the upgrade process in addition to end users. The day or days that you choose for upgrading should be far enough in the future that the upgrade team has enough time to complete all of the preliminary steps. When you plan the timeline, make sure that you schedule time to validate the upgraded sites and time to implement any changes or do any work to re-brand sites.

It is important to communicate with site owners, designers, and developers at the following points during the upgrade process:

- Before the process begins, so that they know the general timeline and what their roles in the process will be.
- After the pre-upgrade checker has been run, so that they can address any issues that have been identified by the checker. For more information about the pre-upgrade checker, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). For example, issues such as customized site templates or custom Web Parts should be reported to the appropriate site owner, designer, or developer before you schedule the upgrade, to give them time to investigate the issues and take preliminary steps. Or a developer might decide that it would be prudent to rebuild a Web Part before the upgrade occurs. And site owners might want to note any customizations that have been done to their sites, including site templates and changes to core Active Server Page Extension (ASPX) files.
- After their sites have been upgraded, so that they can review the sites and make any changes that are needed.

When and what to communicate to site users

It is equally important to communicate with the users of the sites to tell them about the following issues:

- **When their sites will be upgraded** In the case of an in-place upgrade, they must also be informed that their sites will be unavailable during the upgrade.
- **When to expect their upgraded sites to be ready** This means that the upgrade team has not only upgraded, but also verified the functionality of, the upgraded sites.
- **How the upgrade might affect them and what they should know about the new environment** For example, the site will look different and function slightly differently in the new user interface. If you are using Visual Upgrade, inform your users whether they will see the new or old user experience and what to expect. You can also point them to available content, such as What's New articles or training materials, to learn about the new version. For more information about feature changes and visual upgrade, see [Plan visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) and [Changes in key features between versions](#) in the article "What's New in Upgrade".
- **How to get help** If they find an issue with their site after upgrade, where can they go to address it?

Plan to upgrade to Business Connectivity Services (SharePoint Server 2010)

This article describes how upgrading from the Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog to the Microsoft Business Connectivity Services in Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 works and provides guidance about how to upgrade various types of solutions that use the Business Data Catalog.

- [The Business Data Catalog, Application Registry, and Business Data Connectivity service](#)
- [How Business Connectivity Services upgrade works](#)
- [Upgrading by using database attach](#)
- [Solution-specific upgrade considerations](#)

The Business Data Catalog, Application Registry, and Business Data Connectivity service

This section introduces the three services involved in an upgrade from the Business Data Catalog to SharePoint Server 2010.

In Office SharePoint Server 2007, the Business Data Catalog integrates external data into solutions. The Business Data Catalog was implemented as a shared service in the context of the Shared Services Provider framework. The Business Data Catalog stored application definitions, which are similar, but not identical, to BDC models in SharePoint Server 2010.

In SharePoint Server 2010, a new service, the Business Data Connectivity service, integrates external data into solutions. This service is implemented in the new shared services framework of SharePoint Server 2010. For an overview of the new shared services framework, see [Services architecture planning \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/e9874ee4-6f34-46c1-8516-a7b8af300820(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/e9874ee4-6f34-46c1-8516-a7b8af300820\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/e9874ee4-6f34-46c1-8516-a7b8af300820(Office.14).aspx)). The new Business Data Connectivity service is part of the Microsoft Business Connectivity Services, which is a set of client and server capabilities that includes a full set of read-write capabilities with external systems, integration with Microsoft Office 2010 clients, and a rich set of development tools. The object model of the Business Data Connectivity service is not backward compatible with the object model that the Business Data Catalog uses, although the object models are similar.

Another service in SharePoint Server 2010, the Application Registry Service, directly replaces the Business Data Catalog from Office SharePoint Server 2007 and supports the backward compatibility of solutions that are based on the Business Data Catalog. Because the Application Registry Service supports the object model of the Business Data Catalog, the Application Registry Service can support solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog object model. The Application Registry service can

support applications originally created in Office Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 that include one or more of the following elements:

- Custom Web Parts
- Custom code
- Searching

All of these depend on the object model or metadata schema of the Business Data Catalog and will continue to work in SharePoint Server 2010 by using the Application Registry Service.

The Web Parts that were provided by Office SharePoint Server 2007, such as the Business Data List Web Part and the Business Data Association Web Part, are upgraded in SharePoint Server 2010 to run against the Business Data Connectivity service and do not run against the Application Registry Service. For more information, see [Web Parts](#).



Important:

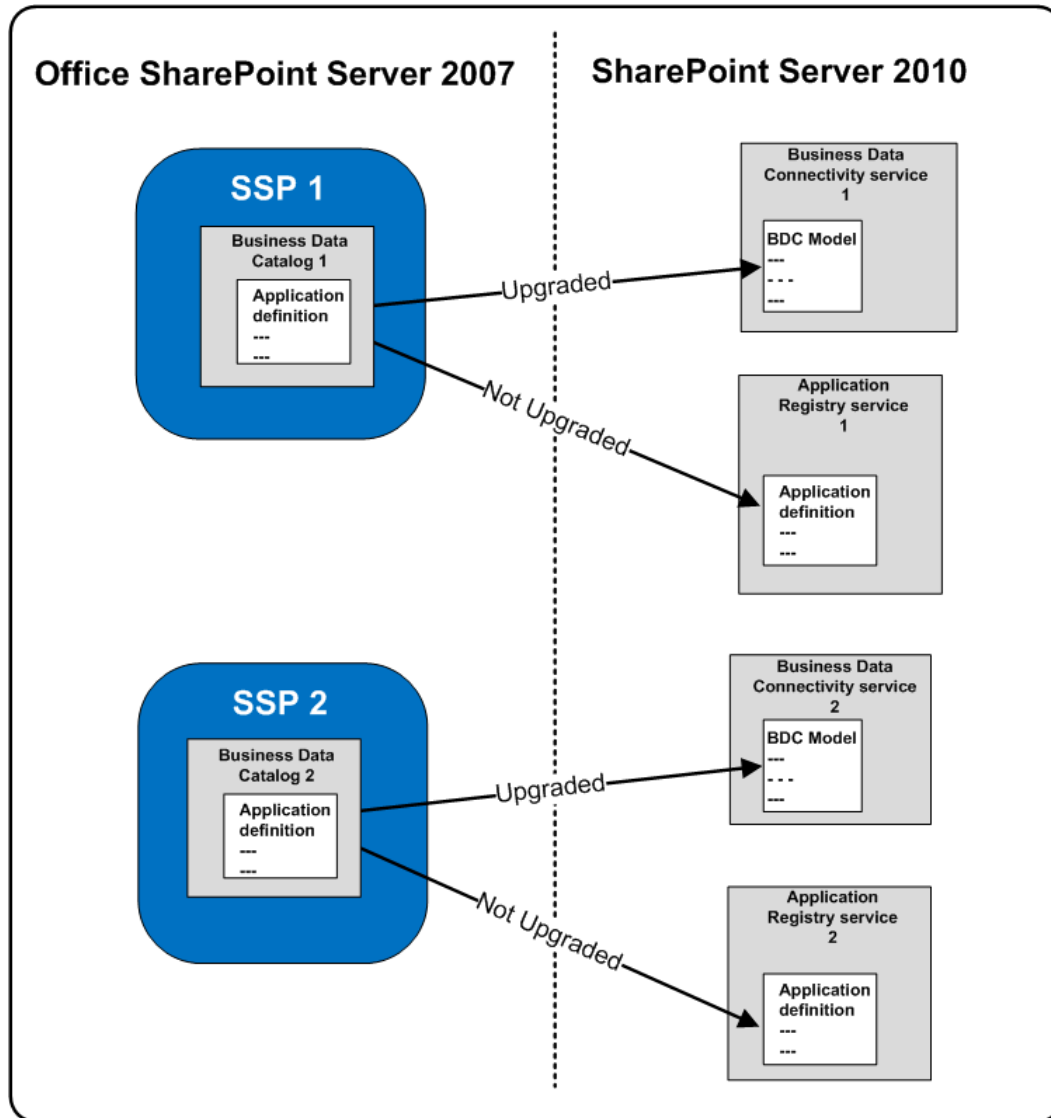
Note that the Application Registry Service is deprecated and exists only to support the backward compatibility of solutions that are based on the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog. Do not build new solutions that depend on the deprecated Application Registry Service. Build new solutions on the Business Data Connectivity service.

How Business Connectivity Services upgrade works

During upgrade from Office SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010 , the following occurs:

1. For each Business Data Catalog that is running in the context of a Shared Service Provider (SSP) in Office SharePoint Server 2007, two services are created in SharePoint Server 2010:
 - An Application Registry Service to store application definitions that are compatible with the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog object model.
 - A Business Data Connectivity service to store BDC models, which are compatible with the SharePoint Server 2010 Business Data Connectivity Services object model. The new object model supports the new features in the Business Data Connectivity service.
2. A copy of each application definition in the Business Data Catalog is placed in the Application Registry service and, an upgraded version that is based on the new object model is placed in the Business Data Connectivity service.

The following illustration shows how this upgrade works. In the graphic, two shared service providers are shown in Office SharePoint Server 2007, and the resulting four services (two instances each of the Application Registry Service and the Business Data Connectivity service) are shown in SharePoint Server 2010 after upgrading:



Warning: Only in-place upgrading is supported for upgrading solutions that are based on the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog. For general information about in-place upgrading, see [Perform an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Upgrading by using database attach

There are two approaches to upgrading from Office SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010: in-place upgrade and database attach upgrade. For more information, see [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). If you use the database attach method to upgrade and you want to continue to use the external data that is accessed through one or more application definitions, you must complete the following tasks:

1. Export application definitions that the solution requires from the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog. For more information, see [Export application definition \(http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=189010\)](#).
2. After upgrading, update the solution to use the object model and features of the Microsoft Business Connectivity Services. This includes updating the application definitions to become BDC models, which are compatible with Microsoft Business Connectivity Services. For information about the Business Data Connectivity service object model, see [Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Software Development Kit \(http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166117\)](#).
3. Import the updated BDC models into the Business Data Connectivity service. For more information, see [Manage BDC models \(SharePoint Server 2010\) \(http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7b6fced6-c8a9-4d79-a11a-8cf3445c52bf\(Office.14\).aspx\)](#).

For more information about database attach upgrading, see [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#) and [Perform post-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Solution-specific upgrade considerations

This section contains recommendations about how to manage specific aspects of solutions that are upgraded to run in SharePoint Server 2010.

- [Models](#)
- [Web Parts](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Single sign-on](#)
- [Single sign-on](#)
- [Maintaining parent and child farm relationships](#)

Models

As described in a previous section, when you upgrade from the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog to Microsoft Business Connectivity Services, two versions of each application definition in the Business Data Catalog are created in SharePoint Server 2010. One identical copy of the application definition is stored in the Application Registry service; another version of the application definition file is upgraded to the Microsoft Business Connectivity Services metadata schema and, now called a “BDC model,” is stored in the new Business Data Connectivity service.

**Important:**

When application definitions are upgraded to BDC models and stored in the Business Data Connectivity service, all errors or warnings that are related to the conversion process are written to the upgrade log. For information about the upgrade log, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

We recommend that you use the upgraded BDC model in the Business Data Connectivity service for future development of the solution. However, if you do additionally develop the original application definition in the Application Registry service, you should make similar changes on the updated BDC model that is stored in the Business Data Connectivity service. This is so that features that rely on the new object model, such as the Web Parts that are included in SharePoint Server 2010, will provide a consistent user experience. Also, because the Application Registry Service is deprecated, you ensure that a solution will be available for future upgrades to subsequent product versions if you develop on the BDC model.

Web Parts

Office SharePoint Server 2007 included the following Web Parts for building solutions that use the Business Data Catalog:

- Business Data List Web Part
- Business Data Association Web Part
- Business Data Actions Web Part
- Business Data Details Web Part
- Business Data Catalog Filter Web Part

The Web Parts that were provided by Office SharePoint Server 2007 are upgraded in SharePoint Server 2010 to run against the Business Data Connectivity service. Such Web Parts that you used in a Office SharePoint Server 2007 solution will continue to work after upgrade by using the upgraded Web Parts and the Business Data Connectivity service. Custom Web Parts in a Office SharePoint Server 2007 solution, however, will run against the Application Registry Service after upgrade. For data consistency, we recommend that you obtain new versions of custom Web Parts that can run against the Business Data Connectivity service.

These Web Parts have been upgraded in SharePoint Server 2010 to work on BDC models in the new Business Data Connectivity service. If a solution in Office SharePoint Server 2007 depends on one or more of these Web Parts, you should upgrade the solution to the Microsoft Business Connectivity Services object model and use the new versions of the Web Parts to interact with it. They are not available to run directly on application definitions in the Application Registry service.

Search

To search external data in Office SharePoint Server 2007, you create a content source that points to an application definition in the Business Data Catalog. If you search content in this manner in Office SharePoint Server 2007, you can continue to search the same external data after upgrading to

SharePoint Server 2010 BY using the Application Registry Service. No modification to the content source is required on upgrade for search to work. It is recommended that you also create a new content source definition that points to the Business Data Connectivity service.

Single sign-on

In Office SharePoint Server 2007, some authentication modes for solutions that use the Business Data Catalog also use the Single Sign-On service, which provides storage and mapping of credentials such as account names and passwords. Application definitions in the Business Data Catalog that depended on the Single Sign-On service included information that references the service.

The Secure Store Service replaces the Single Sign-On service in SharePoint Server 2010. For more information, see [Plan the Secure Store Service \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/e1196de0-1eb9-4c50-aeca-93e0eba7be0d\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/e1196de0-1eb9-4c50-aeca-93e0eba7be0d(Office.14).aspx)). After you upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010, application definitions that were upgraded to the Application Registry service and to the Business Data Connectivity service will be updated to refer to the Secure Store Service. For information about how to migrate data from the Single-Sign-on service to the Secure Store Service, see [Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Important:

If you used a custom Single Sign-On provider in Office SharePoint Server 2007, then you will need to upgrade the provider in SharePoint Server 2010 and update the BDC models and application definitions manually in the Application Registry service and the Business Data Connectivity service.

Maintaining service databases on separate servers

In Office SharePoint Server 2007, the database that the Shared Services Provider uses can optionally be on a separate server from the SharePoint content database. After you upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010, the databases for both the Business Data Connectivity service and the Application Registry service will always be on the same server as the content databases. If you want to maintain separate databases for these services, you will have to do this as a post upgrade step by backing up each service's database and then restoring the databases to a separate server.

Maintaining parent and child farm relationships

In Office SharePoint Server 2007, the Shared Services Provider that includes the Business Data Catalog could be in a farm that services one or more child farms that use the shared services. If you want this service to be available to child farms after you upgrade to the Application Registry service, you will have to use the `CreateDelegatedApplicationProxy` Windows PowerShell command to create a new proxy that connects to the Application Registry Service's database on the parent farm.

The following sample script illustrates the use of this command for this purpose:

```
$proxy=[Microsoft.Office.Server.ApplicationRegistry.SharedService.ApplicationRegistryServiceApplicationProxy]::CreateDelegatedApplicationProxy("<NAME>", "Data Source=<SQLserverName>;Initial Catalog=<ApplicationRegistry DB NAME>;Integrated Security=true")
```

For the Business Data Connectivity service, this operation can be done using SharePoint Central Administration.

See Also

[Plan for Business Connectivity Services \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ff364add-e18d-4d1c-824f-f0ea549fe904\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ff364add-e18d-4d1c-824f-f0ea549fe904(Office.14).aspx))

Plan to upgrade form templates during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010

This article describes the additional steps that are required to upgrade form templates when you upgrade InfoPath Forms Services from the version in Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 and Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 to the version in Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.

In this article:

- [About upgrading forms during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
- [Upgrade form templates during a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
- [Upgrade form templates during an in-place upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

About upgrading forms during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010

When you upgrade from Office SharePoint Server 2007 or Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010, InfoPath Forms Services is also upgraded.

The following upgrade and migration scenarios are relevant for InfoPath Forms Services in SharePoint Server 2010:

- Database attach upgrade

Upgrades forms and form templates from InfoPath Forms Services in Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 or from Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 to another server that is running SharePoint Server 2010. Existing administrator-approved form templates and data connections must be migrated to the new deployment and upgraded to work with InfoPath Forms Services in Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.



Note:

A database attach upgrade is the only way to upgrade Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010.

- In-place upgrade

Upgrades forms and form templates from InfoPath Forms Services for Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010 on the same server. All forms and form templates are upgraded automatically during an in-place upgrade.

For more information about how to upgrade from Office SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010, see [Upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

Upgrade form templates during a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010

A database attach upgrade enables you to move your content to a new farm or new hardware. During a database attach upgrade, you detach all the content databases from an existing farm and then attach the databases to a new server farm installation. When you attach the databases to the new server farm, the upgrade process runs and upgrades the data in place. A database attach upgrade is the only way to upgrade Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010.

The content database contains only some files that are used by InfoPath forms. These files include the following:

- User form templates (.xsn), which are form templates that are deployed by non-administrators. They do not require full trust and do not use data connections that are managed by an administrator. User form templates (.xsn) can be published to lists and form libraries by individual contributors.
- Data connection files (.udcx) for user form templates.
- Content from filled-out forms (.xml) in lists and form libraries.

These files are upgraded automatically when you perform a database attach upgrade.

On the other hand, administrator-approved form templates and data connection files in the Central Administration libraries are stored in the configuration database and must be migrated separately.

These files include the following:

- Administrator-approved form templates (.xsn files) that are uploaded to the Manage Form Templates library on the Central Administration site.
- Data connection files (.udcx files) that are uploaded to the Manage Data Connection Files library on the Central Administration site.

If you copy and attach the content database before these files have been imported, the sites that contain content that depend on administrator-approved forms will produce errors during import.

To avoid these errors, we recommend that you follow these steps in the order listed:

1. Perform the prerequisite steps for upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010.
2. Install and configure SharePoint Server 2010 on the new server.
3. Export administrator-approved form templates and data connection files from the configuration database on the original server that is running Office SharePoint Server 2007 or Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007. For more information about how to export and import administrator-approved forms, form templates, and data connection files between configuration databases, see the [Export and import administrator-approved form template files between configuration databases](#) section later in this article.
4. Import the files to the configuration database on the new server that is running SharePoint Server 2010.
5. Follow the steps in [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#) to attach and upgrade the databases from the original server to the new SharePoint Server 2010 server.

-
6. If the URL of the new server differs from the URL of the previous server, run a Windows PowerShell 2.0 cmdlet to update links that are used in the upgraded forms and form templates. For more information about how to update the links that are used in upgraded forms and form templates, see the [Update form template links to the server](#) section later in this article.

Export and import administrator-approved form template files between configuration databases

The forms data in the content database includes only the files that are used by user forms, form templates, and data connection files that are uploaded to lists and document libraries. It does not include administrator-approved form templates and data connection files that are uploaded to the Central Administration site.

To avoid problems when you upgrade form templates, export the content in the configuration database of the original server that is running Office SharePoint Server 2007 or Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 and import it to the new server that is running SharePoint Server 2010.

To export administrator-approved form templates and data connection files that are stored in the Office SharePoint Server 2007 or Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 configuration database, use the **-o exporttipsadminobjects** command in the Stsadm command-line tool.

To import administrator-approved form templates and data connection files to the configuration database on the new server, use the Windows PowerShell 2.0 [Import-SPInfoPathAdministrationFiles](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6d75660c-b641-4651-9b3c-baa9c760b18a(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6d75660c-b641-4651-9b3c-baa9c760b18a\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6d75660c-b641-4651-9b3c-baa9c760b18a(Office.14).aspx)) cmdlet.

Data-connection time-out settings and other settings on the Configure InfoPath Forms Services administration page are not migrated and must be configured on the new server.

For more information about how to use the Stsadm command-line tool, see [Stsadm command-line tool \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=186993>).

Update form template links to the server

During upgrades or content migrations, it is common to change the URL of the server that contains forms and form templates. If the URL of the new server differs from the URL of the previous server, links that forms and form templates use might have to be updated to the URL of the new server. These include links in the form data to the form template file location, or links in the form template to data connection files or other resource files.

Both user form templates and administrator-approved templates can be affected.

To update links that are used in user form templates and data connection files, run the [Update-SPInfoPathUserFileUrl](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/576349fa-386d-44cb-bbad-329fa81dbd8c(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/576349fa-386d-44cb-bbad-329fa81dbd8c\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/576349fa-386d-44cb-bbad-329fa81dbd8c(Office.14).aspx)) cmdlet.

To update links that are used in administrator-approved form templates and data connection files, run the [Update-SPInfoPathAdminFileUrl](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0d3991ec-dfff-406b-b35d-d452a51dfc6c(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0d3991ec-dfff-406b-b35d-d452a51dfc6c\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0d3991ec-dfff-406b-b35d-d452a51dfc6c(Office.14).aspx)) cmdlet.

These cmdlets update the name of the server in URLs that form templates and data connection files use. They do not update links in forms that are moved between libraries by users, or in other forms content that is stored in the content database. Users can fix those links by using the **Relink All** command that is available in the form library settings. Forms and form templates that are upgraded or migrated by using the database attach process are relinked automatically.

Upgrade form templates during an in-place upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010

Form templates for InfoPath Forms Services are upgraded automatically as part of any in-place upgrade of SharePoint Server.

For more information about how to upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010, see [Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

Plan visual upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

This article discusses the new visual upgrade feature in Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. If your organization plans to perform an upgrade of Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007, you can take advantage of this new feature. By default, the look and feel of sites is preserved during an upgrade from Office SharePoint Server 2007. Site owners can switch to the new user interface permanently, or they can choose to preview the new user interface for their SharePoint sites. By using the visual upgrade feature, you can choose to move all sites to the new user interface. If you select the latter option, you override the user interface for site collection owners and site owners. You can also choose to either preserve customized pages or you can choose to reset all customized pages. Both choices will update the look and feel of template pages, but the latter option deletes modifications from customized pages and cannot be undone.



Note:

The visual upgrade feature is not available if you are performing an upgrade on a single server with built-in database through the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard. However, the visual upgrade feature is still available if you use the PSConfig command-line tool for upgrade.

This article lists key considerations for planning to use visual upgrade, and it also discusses known issues. For more information, see [Manage visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In this article:

- [Key planning phase of visual upgrade](#)
- [Training site collection owners and site owners](#)
- [Known issues](#)

Key planning phase of visual upgrade

Visual upgrade is a feature that is part of the upgrade process. Before you perform the upgrade, ensure that you know about the effects of choosing between the two different options visual upgrade has to offer.

Preserving the existing user interface

If you choose to preserve the look and feel of existing SharePoint sites, you give site collection owners control over their site collections and site owners control over their sites. All the data and settings from the original sites are preserved, and layout, command organization, and styles preserve the previous user interface. Regardless of the type of farm upgrade that you select, you receive all the infrastructure benefits of Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 including improved reliability, scalability, and manageability. Preserving the previous user interface reduces the likelihood that customized content will cease to function. This ensures that you and the users can continue to use existing SharePoint sites until all upgrade work, including troubleshooting and updating customizations, has been completed.

Upgrading to the new user interface

If you choose to change all the existing SharePoint sites to the new user interface, site collection owners and site owners have no control over the upgrade. All the data and settings from the existing SharePoint sites are upgraded to the new user interface. You might want to choose this option if there are no customizations or if you have tested any customizations that you need before the upgrade. Even if you choose this option, you still have the option of either preserving customized pages or resetting customized pages. If you need to keep customizations, or if you are unsure whether to keep customizations, you should choose to preserve customized pages. Resetting the customized pages removes customizations and cannot be undone. Choose this option if you do not need the customizations any longer and if you know that no important data will be lost. For more information, see [Determine how to handle customizations \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), and [Redeploying Customizations and Solutions in SharePoint Foundation 2010 and SharePoint Server 2010](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=186372>).

Training site collection owners and site owners

It is important that you train users about the effects of either preserving the look and feel of existing SharePoint sites or upgrading all sites to the new user interface. Educated users are prepared and know what to expect, which will minimize helpdesk support and frustrations.

If you upgrade all sites to the new user interface, inform users about changes and new features, such as the ribbon, the new page editing interface, and interactive calendars. Also, let them know about possible issues that they can expect. For instance, they might have issues with customizations, such as pages not displaying correctly. For information about general upgrade issues, see [Troubleshoot upgrade issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

If you choose to preserve the look and feel of existing SharePoint sites, explain to site collection owners and site owners that the user interface will not change during upgrade, and tell them about the choices they can make.

By default, site owners have control over their sites. They can use the **Preview New Visuals** option (under **Site Settings**) to preview the new user interface and then switch between the previous and new user interface. This gives them time to ensure that everything works correctly, and they can fix any issues with their pages that appeared after upgrade. When site owners are ready, they can update their sites to the new user interface. However, site collection owners can choose to finalize the new user interface, which overrides the control that site owners have over visual upgrade for their sites. If site collection owners want to keep the previous user interface for their site collection, they also have an option to hide visual upgrade settings from site owners.

Site owners also need to know that if they make changes in the new user interface while they are in preview mode and then switch back to the previous user interface, this information may not display correctly.

We recommend that you have a plan and set a time limit for how long the previous user interface should be used in your SharePoint deployment. For example, each site collection administrator may be given 90 days to work with his or her site owners to transition from the previous to the new user

interface. This time limit ensures that users are given a reasonable time to become familiar with the new user interface and to resolve any issues that might have occurred during the upgrade. Ensure that you communicate the time limit to the users, and that they know you can force through an upgrade of all sites. Also, you can view the current status of the user interface of upgraded sites to monitor the progress of these sites. For more information, see [Manage visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

If site collection owners decide to use the new user interface for all sites within their site collection, they cannot change their minds. However, as a farm administrator, you can change these settings by reverting sites to the previous user interface with Windows PowerShell or SharePoint Object Model. For more information, see [Manage visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

It is important to tell site collection owners and site owners that as long as sites use the previous user interface, new features—such as the ribbon, in-place editing for Wiki pages, interactive calendars, and list relationships—will not be available. However, once sites switch to the new user interface, application features automatically appear. Also, it is important to note that all new sites created after the upgrade use the new user interface by default.

Known issues

There are a few known issues to consider:

- Because of the social networking enhancements in Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, existing My Site templates default to the new user interface after upgrade with the preserve the existing user interface option selected. However, all subpages have the user interface specified by visual upgrade.
- Project Web Access (PWA) sites, which are used to track project data in Microsoft Project Server 2010, require the new user interface and do not follow visual upgrade settings.
- In Excel Services Web Parts, the new SharePoint Server 2010 Web Part properties are exposed once an upgrade is complete, but before sites have been moved to the new user interface. Therefore, some properties can be set, but will not do anything until the page is updated to the new UI.
- If you use SharePoint Server 2010, ensure that you use the same version and service pack of SharePoint Designer.

See Also

[Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

[Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

[Upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

Testing and troubleshooting upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

Before you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you should take time to test your upgrade process and understand what issues you might face in your actual upgrade. This section includes information about how to test upgrade and use the information from that test to predict how much time and how much space you will need for upgrade, and what steps you can take to clean up your environment before you perform your actual upgrade.

During and after upgrade, use the articles in this section to address any issues and resume the upgrade process.

In this section:

- [Best practices for testing upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Follow these best practices to get the most out of your upgrade testing.
- [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Find out how to plan for success by testing upgrade by using your actual data in either a physical or virtual environment.
- [Estimate how long the upgrade process will take and the space that you need \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Use your test information to understand how long your upgrade will take.
- [Cleaning up your environment before upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Upgrade runs more smoothly when you prepare your environment by cleaning up extra sites or data. This article lists common things that you should consider cleaning up before you start the upgrade process.
- [Troubleshoot upgrade issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Follow these recommendations to troubleshoot any issues that occur during upgrade. You can also look up common issues and find out how to address them.
- [Recovering after a failed upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
If you created a backup of your environment and databases before you began an in-place upgrade, or if you set your environment to read-only before you began a database attach upgrade, you can recover your environment if the upgrade process fails.
- [Resume upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
If you encounter errors during upgrade, you can address them by using the troubleshooting article, and then use this article to restart or resume upgrade.

In addition, the following resources can be helpful when you test your upgrade process:

- SharePoint Products 2010 Upgrade Worksheet

Use this worksheet to record information about your environment while you test your upgrade.

Download the worksheet from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928>

(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928>).

- Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products - Test Your Upgrade Process model

This poster has a visual display of information about how to test your upgrade process. Download

the poster from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166303>

(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166303>).

Best practices for testing upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

To understand your environment before you try to perform an upgrade, and to plan accurately for the time that an upgrade will require, you should perform one or more trial upgrades. The goal of testing upgrade is to find issues early and address them so that you can have confidence in your process and the outcome when you perform the real upgrade. To perform an accurate and useful test of the upgrade process from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, follow these best practices:

1. Make your test environment as similar as possible to your real environment.

If possible, use the same kind of hardware and configure it by using the same settings, the same URLs, and so on. The more you can minimize the differences between your test environment and your real environment, the better. The more differences you introduce, the more time that you are likely to spend time tracking down unrelated issues to make sure that they will not occur during the actual upgrade.

2. Know what is in your environment. Do a full survey first.

Take the time to document the hardware and software that is present in your environment, what server-side customizations are installed and used, and where, and what settings you need. This will help you plan more fully, and also help you recover if upgrade fails. A worksheet is available so that you can record information about your environment while you prepare for upgrade. Download the worksheet from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928> (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928>).

3. Use real data.

Use copies of your actual databases to run the tests. When you test by using real data, you can identify any trouble areas and also determine your upgrade performance. It also gives you the opportunity to measure how long different upgrade sequences and actions take on different kinds of data. If you cannot test all the data, test a representative subset of the data to make sure that you have uncovered any issues with the different kinds and sizes of sites, lists, libraries, and customizations that are present in your environment.

4. Run multiple tests.

A single test can tell you whether you will encounter big problems, but multiple tests will help ensure that you have uncovered all the issues that you might face and can also give you a more accurate timeline for the process. By running multiple tests, you can determine which upgrade approaches will work best for your environment, which downtime mitigation techniques you should plan to use, and how the process or performance may change after you address the issues that you uncovered in your first tests. Your final test pass can help you validate whether you have addressed all of the errors and are ready to upgrade your production environment.

5. Do not ignore warnings.

Even though it is not an error, a warning can lead to problems later in the upgrade process. Work through errors, yes, but also investigate any warnings to make sure that you know what the effect of that warning might be.

6. Test the upgraded environment, not just the upgrade process.

Check your service applications and services. Run a search crawl and review the log files. Verify that the My Site Web sites are working.

7. Verify sites in both Visual Upgrade modes.

Do not assume that because the site can be previewed well in one mode that it will work correctly in the other mode. Check both the previous version and new version user experience.

8. Consider a preview environment.

You can create a preview environment in which your users can verify their sites after a test upgrade, so that they can help you verify the upgrade and find issues. You can use a read-only environment, or you can let your users make changes but warn them that any changes they make will not be saved. Consider limiting this preview environment to a small set of representative sites, and limiting access to interested parties only, to reduce the time that you will need to host the preview environment and the amount of feedback you receive.

For more information about how to test upgrade, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) and the "Test your upgrade process" poster available at <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166303> (*http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166303*).

Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues (SharePoint Server 2010)

Before you begin the process of upgrading from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you will want to test the upgrade process to make sure that you know exactly what you have to do to have a successful upgrade. By using a trial upgrade to test the process, you can find out:

- What customizations you have in your environment, so that you can plan for how to deal with them during upgrade.
- Whether you should upgrade your hardware to make your upgrade run more efficiently and more quickly.
- The timing for your upgrade, or how long upgrade will take for your environment.
- What you need to plan for, operationally — for example, resources to have available.

In addition, you can use the trial upgrade to become familiar with the upgrade tools and the process itself, so that you know what to expect when you go through the actual process. Through testing, you can find out:

- Which special cases apply to your environment and which upgrade approach will be most efficient for you?
- What does the upgrade user interface look like? How do you know when you have finished one phase and are moving through another?
- Where are the log files, and how do you read them? What information do they provide?
- Which techniques can you use to mitigate downtime?

This article provides basic steps for testing upgrade, and it gives recommendations for reviewing the results and adjusting your upgrade plans based on what you learn during the tests.

In this article:

- [Set up a test environment](#)
- [Identify and install customizations](#)
- [Copy real data to the test environment and try the upgrade](#)
- [Review your results](#)
- [Adjust your plans and test again](#)

In addition, the following resources can be helpful when you test your upgrade process:

- SharePoint Products 2010 Upgrade Worksheet
Use this worksheet to record information about your environment while you test your upgrade. Download the worksheet from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928> (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928>).

-
- Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products - Test Your Upgrade Process model

This poster has a visual display of information about testing your upgrade process. Download the poster from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166303> (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166303>).

Set up a test environment

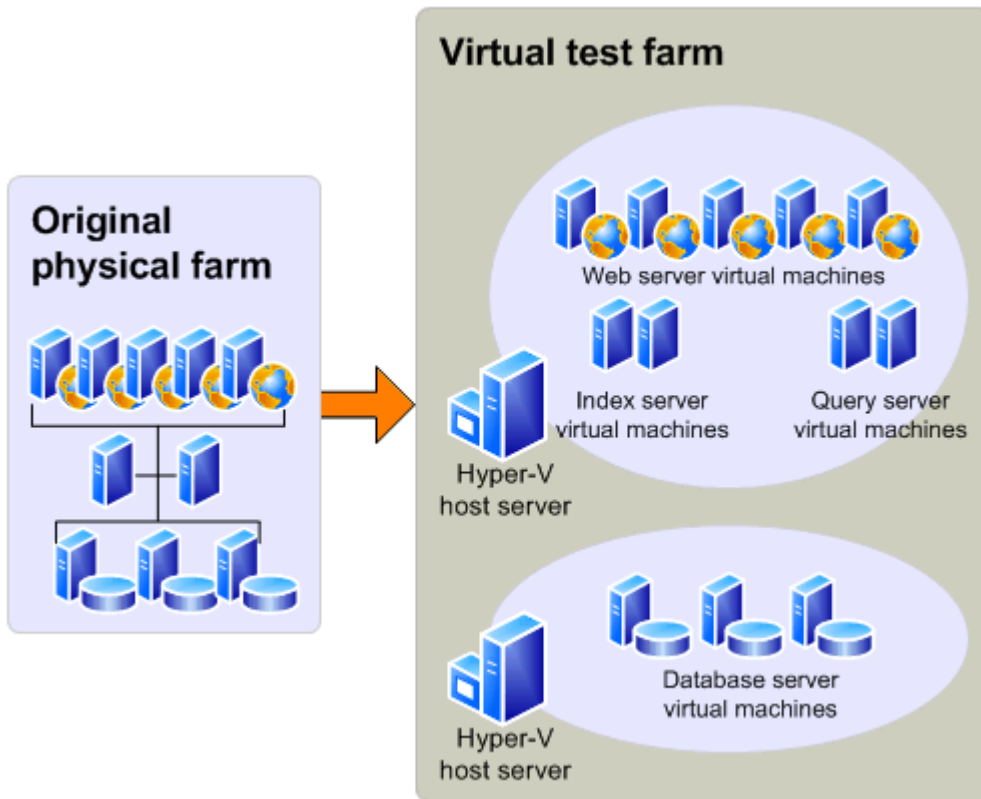
You can use either virtual or physical hardware to test the upgrade process. Every environment is unique, so there are no general guidelines for how long upgrade will take or how difficult a particular customization will be to upgrade. The best way to gauge how your upgrade will go is to perform a series of trial upgrades.

When you create your test environment:

- Make your test farm as similar as possible to your real farm — for example, hardware, software, and space available.
- Use the same URLs in your test farm as in your real farm. (Otherwise, you will waste time diagnosing issues relating to the URLs that will not come up in the real upgrade.)
- Be sure that you transfer all of your settings and customizations to the test environment. The section [Identify and install customizations](#) provides information about gathering this information.

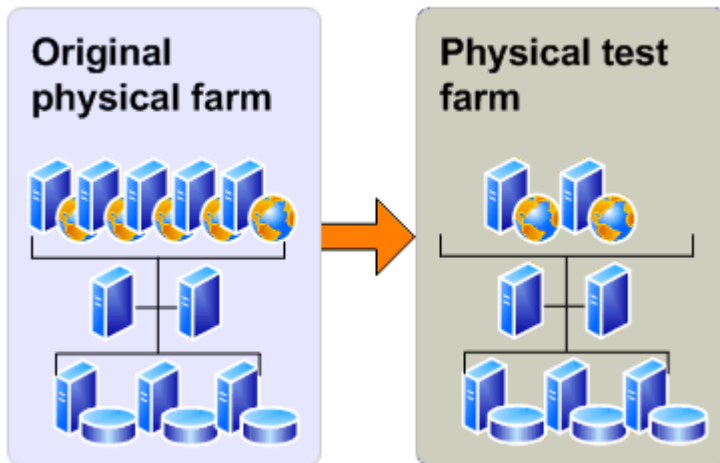
Using a virtual test environment

When you test by using a virtualized environment, you do not need a lot of hardware. You can replicate your environment by using just two servers that are running Hyper-V. One server has images for the front-end Web servers and application servers, and the other server has images for the database servers.



Using a physical test environment

When you test by using a physical environment, you need to replicate your entire server farm environment as closely as possible. If you simplify the number of front-end Web servers, application servers, or database servers too much, you will not have an accurate estimate of how long the upgrade process will take and you may not account for complications that arise from interactions between servers in the same role (such as SQL Server transactions). If you have multiple servers in a role in your original farm, use at least two servers for that role in the test farm to test for such issues.



Additional test environments for database attach upgrade

If you are using the database attach upgrade approach, you might need to create one additional test environment: a single server farm that is running Office SharePoint Server 2007 that you can use to run the pre-upgrade checker before you attempt to upgrade the data.

You can avoid this step by running the pre-upgrade checker on your existing production farm.

Identify and install customizations

To have an accurate test process, you must find all the customizations in your current environment and copy them to the test environment. For more information about the types of customizations you need to identify, see [Determine how to handle customizations \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

- Use the pre-upgrade checker to identify site definitions, site templates, and features in your environment.

The pre-upgrade checker steps through each site collection and generates a report about the state of each site. It also saves list definition information for each list. You can review the reports to find issues and address them before you start the upgrade process. Unlike the pre-upgrade scan tool for Office SharePoint Server 2007, the pre-upgrade checker is a read-only tool and does not change your sites. For more information about this tool and steps for running it, see [Pre-upgrade scanning and reporting for future releases \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd793609\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd793609(Office.12).aspx)) and [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

- Use the **Stsadm -o enumallwebs** operation on all content databases in your Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment to identify specific customizations in subsites. This operation lists an ID for each site collection and subsite in your environment and the templates that the site relies on. This operation was first introduced in Office SharePoint Server 2007 with Service Pack 2 (SP2).

For more information, see [Enumallwebs: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188520&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188520&clcid=0x409>).

- Use a tool such as WinDiff (a tool that is provided with most Microsoft operating systems) to compare your production environment servers with your test farm servers. You can use this tool to see which files exist on your servers and the differences between them.
- Check the web.config files for any changes, and look in the SafeControls element to find any custom controls.
- Use the SharePoint Diagnostics Tool (SPDiag) to find deployed solutions. For more information, see [SharePoint Diagnostics Tool \(SPDiag\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188519&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188519&clcid=0x409>).
- Create a list of all customizations that you find. Identify the source of the customizations, if possible. For example, are there third-party add-ins or templates that were customized in-house? After you identify the source, you can then check for updated or upgraded versions of the customizations. A worksheet is available that you can use to fill in information about your environment, based on the data you find in the results from the pre-upgrade checker and in your research on your customizations. Download the worksheet from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928> (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928>) and customize it to suit your needs.



Tip

- Whom do you contact about customizations that you did not create?

After you identify all the customizations, copy them to the appropriate servers in your test farm. You can use the Windows PowerShell cmdlet **test-spcontentdatabase** before you attach a database to SharePoint Server 2010 to determine whether any customizations are missing from the environment. Run this command for each database after you restore the databases to your database server, but before you run the upgrade. Note that this cmdlet runs silently — it will not return any output unless there is an error.

Copy real data to the test environment and try the upgrade

You cannot achieve your testing goals unless you use your actual data. You can use the following methods to create a copy of your data:

- For in-place upgrade, create a farm backup and then restore it to the test environment. For more information, see [Back up and restore an entire farm \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188512&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188512&clcid=0x409>).
- For database attach upgrade, you need to use the Microsoft SQL Server backup and restore tools to create a copy of your content databases and any other databases that you want to upgrade. For more information, see [Back up and restore databases \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188518&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188518&clcid=0x409>).

There is no better way to tell what may come up during upgrade than to perform the test on a copy of all of your data; however, this might not always be a realistic option for initial testing. You can phase the testing by testing one database at a time (if the databases are large) so that you can make sure you test whatever is unique about that data set, or you can assemble a subset of data from representative sites in your environment. If you want to first test by using a subset of your data, be sure that the subset has the following characteristics:

- The data subset contains sites that are typical of the sites you support in your environment.
- The size and complexity of the data subset is very similar to the actual size and complexity of your environment.

 **Important:**

Testing a subset of your data does not produce a valid benchmark for how long it will take to process the entire volume of data for your environment.

After copying the data, take a first pass through the upgrade process to see what happens. This is just the preliminary round.

Try in-place upgrade

If you want to try an in-place upgrade approach, use the following steps to try out the upgrade process:

1. Create a backup of your farm.
2. Restore the backup to your test farm.
For more information, see [Back up and restore an entire farm \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188512&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188512&clcid=0x409>).
3. Run the pre-upgrade checker. Make note of any issues it finds. You will want to address these issues in your original environment before you run the actual upgrade on your product farm. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
4. Follow the steps in [Perform an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) to try the in-place upgrade.
5. Review the results.

Try a database attach upgrade

1. Create a SQL Server backup of your content databases and Shared Services Provider (SSP) databases.
2. Use SQL Server to restore the backups into your single-server test farm and attach the content databases to that environment.
For more information, see [Back up and restore databases \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188518&clcid=0x409>).
3. Run the pre-upgrade checker. Make note of any issues it finds and any changes it makes. You will want to address these issues and make these changes in your original environment before you run

the actual upgrade on your product farm. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

4. Follow the steps in [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#) to configure the test environment for a database attach upgrade.
5. Follow the steps in [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#) to try the database attach upgrade process.

Review your results

After your test upgrade has been completed, you can review the results and revisit your plans. Look at the log files, look at the upgraded sites, and check out your customizations. How did upgrade work for your environment? What did you find out? What do you need to rethink about your upgrade plan?

Review the log files

Review the following log files:

- The pre-upgrade checker log file.
The log files for the pre-upgrade checker (**stsadm -o preupgradecheck**) are located at %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web server extensions\12\LOGS. The log files are named in the following format: PreUpgradeCheck_YYYYMMDD-HHMMSS-SSS-random-number.log, where YYYYMMDD is the date and HHMMSS-SSS is the time (hours in 24-hour clock format, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds) and the random number is used to differentiate between possible simultaneous attempts to run the pre-upgrade checker.
- The SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard (Psconfig.exe) log file (generated when you run this wizard as part of your trial in-place upgrade).
The PSCDiagnostics log files are located at %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web server extensions\14\LOGS.
- The upgrade log file and the upgrade error log file (generated when you run the upgrade).
The upgrade log file (.log) and the upgrade error log file (.err) are located at %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web server extensions\14\LOGS. The log files are named in the following format: Upgrade-YYYYMMDD-HHMMSS-SSS.log, where YYYYMMDD is the date and HHMMSS-SSS is the time (hours in 24-hour clock format, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds).

To review the log files to find and troubleshoot issues, start at the top of the files. Errors or warnings may be repeated if they occur for several site collections in the environment, or if they block the upgrade process altogether. For example, if you cannot connect to the configuration database, the upgrade process will try (and fail) several times and these attempts will be listed in the log file.

Search, or visually scan, for the following entries:

- **Finished upgrading SPFarm Name=<Name of Configuration Database>**

-
- **In-place upgrade session finishes. Root object = SPFarm=<Name of Configuration Database>, recursive = True. 0 errors and 0 warnings encountered.**

If you find these entries, the installation was successful.

If you do not find the entries from the previous step, you can identify specific issues that may have contributed to the failure by searching, or visually scanning, through the Upgrade.log file for the following terms:

- Search for **ERROR** in the log files to find any failures (such as failing components or faulty database connections).
- Search for **WARNING** to find issues such as missing features or components.

To find upgrade issues, you may find it useful to use a log parser to run queries against the log files.

Restart upgrade, if necessary

During a database attach upgrade, any sites that cannot be upgraded will be skipped. During an in-place upgrade, if the server restarts or the upgrade fails, you will need to restart the upgrade process to upgrade the remaining sites.

To see whether any sites were missed or skipped during upgrade, run the following Stsadm operation **stsadm -o localupgradestatus** on every front-end Web server in your SharePoint Server 2010 server farm. For more information about this operation, see [Localupgradestatus: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188516&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188516&clcid=0x409>).

If the upgrade skipped any site collections, you can restart the upgrade process for the database that contains that site collection by using the following Windows PowerShell cmdlet: **upgrade-spcontentdatabase -id <GUID>**. For more information about this cmdlet, see [Upgrade-SPContentDatabase](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9c7f1a52-02a7-452d-9746-a4e89aa54874(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9c7f1a52-02a7-452d-9746-a4e89aa54874\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9c7f1a52-02a7-452d-9746-a4e89aa54874(Office.14).aspx)).

For more information, see [Resume upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Review upgraded sites

Review your upgraded sites to identify any issues that need to be addressed before you run the upgrade process on your production environment. For more information about specific things to look for, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Adjust your plans and test again

Repeat the testing process until you are sure that you have found all the issues that you may face and that you know how to deal with them. Your goal is to know what your plan is if it is 4:00 P.M. on Sunday, you have to be back online Monday morning, and it is not going well. Is there a point of no return? Test your rollback plan and make sure that it works before you begin your real upgrade.

Estimate how long the upgrade process will take and the space that you need (SharePoint Server 2010)

An important part of planning your upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 is determining how long the upgrade process will take and how much storage space will be required. Every environment is unique and includes different hardware capabilities and different site characteristics. The space and the length of time that you need to run an upgrade will vary greatly depending on your environment. The best way to estimate these factors is to perform a trial upgrade, and then review the space and time that it took. For more information about how to perform a trial upgrade, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In this article:

- [Estimate the space that you need for the upgrade](#)
- [Estimate how long the upgrade will take](#)

Estimate the space that you need for the upgrade

During both the in-place upgrade and database attach upgrade approaches, the databases might expand during upgrade. Also, many transactions take place while the upgrade process runs, so you must make sure that the log files have room to expand to accommodate the changes that are occurring. You have to plan for growth in both the databases and the log files.

When planning your upgrade, make sure that your current environment follows the best practices for storage for Office SharePoint Server 2007 so that you have the best experience and performance during upgrade. For more information, see [Physical storage recommendations \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc298801.aspx>). You should also review the best practices for SharePoint Server 2010 and make any adjustments needed to your upgraded environment.

Because of the changes in table structures in the new version, the databases grow temporarily while the data is reorganized. This space can be recovered after upgrade, but you should ensure that there is room for the databases to grow up to 50 percent larger than their current sizes during either an in-place or database attach upgrade (be aware that after upgrade, you can reduce the database again to recover much of this space). You should also make sure that there is room on your database servers for your databases to grow over time with typical use. To find out how large your databases currently are, use Enterprise Manager in Microsoft SQL Server. In addition to database space, you also must have room for the following items:

- The temporary databases. Ensure that you have enough database space to enable quick growth of the temporary databases. If you have insufficient space, the upgrade process might time out and the upgrade will fail.
- The upgrade log files.
- The transaction log files for the databases. These log files must grow quickly to accommodate the number of changes occurring in the databases.



Note:

In very large environments, there is a possibility that the default growth rate for the transaction log files (10 percent) is not enough to keep up with the upgrade process; this can cause a time-out. Again, a trial upgrade is the best way to determine whether the transaction log files can keep up with the upgrade process. If your environment is very large, or if the process timed out during a trial upgrade, consider expanding the SQL Server transaction log files beforehand to make sure you have room for the number of transactions that must be processed. For more information about how to expand the SQL Server transaction logs, see [Expanding a Database \(SQL Server 2005\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182619) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182619>) or [Expanding a Database \(SQL Server 2008\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182620) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182620>).

Estimate how long the upgrade will take

With your disk space estimates in hand, and some testing under your belt, you can now calculate a rough estimate of how long the actual upgrade process will take. Upgrade times vary widely among environments. The performance for an upgrade depends greatly on the hardware being used, the complexity of the sites, and the particular characteristics of your implementation. For example, if you have many large document libraries, these may take longer to upgrade than a simpler site.

Factors that influence performance are described in the following table.

| Content factors | Hardware factors |
|---|---|
| The number of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site collections • Subwebs • Lists • Document versions (number and size) • Documents • Links Plus the overall database size itself. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SQL Server disk input/output per second • SQL Server database to disk layout • SQL Server temporary database optimizations • SQL Server CPU and memory characteristics • Web server CPU and memory characteristics • Network bandwidth and latency |

How your data is structured can affect how long it takes to upgrade it. For example, 10,000 lists with 10 items each will have a longer upgrade time than 10 lists with 10,000 items. The actions required to upgrade the list infrastructure must be performed for each list, regardless of the number of items; therefore, more lists equals more actions. The same goes for most of the items in the "content factors" column in the table above.

The structure of your hardware can also have a big effect on performance. Generally, the database server performance is more important than Web server performance, but underpowered hardware or connectivity issues at either tier can significantly affect upgrade performance.

The upgrade approach you have chosen will also make a big difference in how long the process will take. Performing a database attach upgrade is the quickest method (however, the pre-upgrade and post-upgrade steps for this approach take longer than for in-place upgrade). An in-place upgrade takes a little more time because you are upgrading the environment in addition to the sites, but you do not have as many pre-upgrade and post-upgrade steps when you use this approach.

The best way to estimate overall time is to do a trial upgrade of a small part or all of the data, and then review the upgrade log files. The log files contain the duration for your upgrade — look for Total Elapsed Time at the bottom of the upgrade log file. Use this time to project a duration for your full set of content. You can also use the log files to check your progress during the upgrade process. The upgrade.log file is located at %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\web server extensions\14\LOGS.

The estimate you arrive at based on your trial upgrade is for the actual upgrade process for the data; it does not include all of the steps that you have to perform before and after this step, which can take more time than the upgrade of the data itself. When estimating how long the upgrade will take, in addition to the time that is required for data to be processed, you must also estimate how long the activities during the pre-upgrade and post-upgrade phases will take.

For pre-upgrade steps, consider the following factors:

- **Creating custom elements** Upgrading Web Parts or re-doing custom templates to take advantage of new features will take some time. The process of creating custom elements should begin early, during the evaluation phase of your project.
- **Backing up the databases** For in-place upgrade, you must perform a full backup — not a differential backup — of your entire environment to make sure that you can recover in the remote possibility that the upgrade fails and you must rebuild your server farm. For large environments, this step can take a significant amount of time. In particular, if you are backing up to a network location, network latency issues can slow this process down.

For post-upgrade steps, consider the following factors:

- **Verifying sites and making changes** Allow enough time for users to validate their sites after the upgrade. This may take several days. For more information, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- **Creating service applications and configuring services** This step only applies during a database attach upgrade (during an in-place upgrade, the service applications are created as part of the upgrade process). Creating service applications and configuring services does not take long;

however, if you need to contact a database administrator to pre-create the databases for you, you might need a day or two of lead time.

- **Converting profile properties to taxonomy data and updating the photo store for User Profile services** You must convert user profile properties that include choice lists to use taxonomy features provided by the Managed Metadata service. Depending on the number of user profiles in your environment, these steps can add one or more hours to the upgrade process.
- **Running a people crawl** For large organizations, this step can take more than 24 hours.
- **Running a search crawl on all content** For large sites, this step can take more than 24 hours.

Additional factors in your environment can also contribute to longer upgrade times, including the following:

- **Very large document libraries** A document library with more than 250,000 documents all in the root of the document library (instead of in folders) will take a long time to upgrade, and the upgrade might not be successful. Following the Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 guidelines for using folders to break up large document libraries can help you manage the library size. For example, if you rearrange the same document library so that the 250,000 documents are divided into 125 folders, it should upgrade more easily.
- **Very large databases** Databases larger than 100 GB can take a long time to upgrade.



Note

- If you have content databases that are larger than 100 GB and include mixed site types (such as My Site Web sites and team sites together with published sites), we recommend that you divide them up into smaller databases that contain a consistent type of data before you run the upgrade. Larger databases not only take longer to upgrade, but they can make it harder to recover if the upgrade is not completed successfully.
- You can use the **mergecontentdbs** or the **backup** and **restore** operations in Stsadm.exe to move sites between databases. For more information, see [Mergecontentdbs: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262923(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262923\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262923(Office.12).aspx)) and [Backup and restore: Stsadm operations \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263431(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263431\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263431(Office.12).aspx)).

If you have a very large database (more than 100 GB) that you cannot break up because most of the content is in a single site collection, you may want to reconsider your upgrade approach. A database attach upgrade approach is more difficult with very large databases, because backing up and restoring such large databases is problematic.



Caution:

Be sure that you are following the capacity planning guidelines from the previous and new versions before you attempt the upgrade. If you have exceeded the guidelines for best performance, the upgrade process might take longer, or it might not succeed (for example, the process might time out repeatedly on the same large document library). If your deployment does not meet the recommended capacity guidelines, consider whether you need to do some work to meet those guidelines before you try the upgrade. Again, a trial upgrade can help you with that decision.

- **Communications requirements**

You need to notify your users and your team of the upgrade schedule, and give them time to do their tasks. For more information, see [Create a communication plan \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

- **Managing system center alerts and alarms**

You need to monitor system performance during upgrade, but you will not need to monitor specific features. Pause any unnecessary alarms and alerts from Microsoft Systems Center Operations Manager or Microsoft Operations Manager, and then turn them on again after upgrade.

- **Turning SQL mirroring and log shipping on/off**

You should turn off mirroring and log shipping before you upgrade, and then turn them on again after you are sure that your environment is running correctly after the upgrade. We recommend that you do not run mirroring or log shipping during upgrade, because this creates additional load on the servers running SQL Server and also wastes resources mirroring or shipping temporary data.

Test your upgrade process to find out how long it may take, then create a schedule for your upgrade operations and test that to determine your timeline. You should include the time that you need to do the pre-upgrade and post-upgrade steps in your operations timeline: If it takes 5 hours to back up your environment before you start, you need to include that time in your outage window. Also include buffer time in case you need to restore or recover — you should determine both your planned outage (realistic case) and your emergency outage (worst case) timelines.

Cleaning up your environment before upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

Before you begin upgrading from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you should make sure that your environment is functioning in a healthy state and that you clean up any content that you do not have to upgrade. You can also take the time to remove or rearrange content so that you will have the structure that you want after you perform the upgrade.

In this article:

- [Items to clean up](#)
- [Making structural changes](#)

Items to clean up

Many of these items can be removed or repaired by using Stsadm.exe commands.



Important:

To run the Stsadm command-line tool, you must be a member of the Administrators group on the local computer.

Delete unused or underused site collections and subwebs

You do not want to upgrade content that you do not have to keep. If it has been unused for a long time and will not be needed in the future, back it up, and then delete it to free storage and administrative resources, improve upgrade performance, and reduce upgrade risk. Be sure to communicate with site owners or organizational contacts regarding the site status — you want to make sure that the site is not needed before you delete it (for example, you do not want to delete sites that are required for compliance, such as emergency procedures, even though they may not be updated frequently).

For more information about how to delete site collections and subwebs, see:

- [Deletesite: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc261873(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc261873\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc261873(Office.12).aspx))
- [Deleteweb: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262877(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262877\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262877(Office.12).aspx))

Address large lists

By default, large list query throttling is applied after an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010. If a list is very large, and users use a view or perform a query that exceeds the limit or throttling threshold, the view or query will not be permitted. Check any large lists in your environment and have the site owner or list owner address the issue before upgrade.

For example, they can create indexed columns by using filtered views, organize items into folders, set an item limit on the page for a large view, or use an external list. For more information about how to address issues with large lists, see [Manage lists and libraries with many items](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182370) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182370>) on Office Online.

Address large numbers of site collections in a content database

If you have 5,000 or more site collections in a database, consider breaking them out into multiple databases. In Office SharePoint Server 2007, there was a default warning at 9,000 site collections and a hard limit at 15,000 site collections. In SharePoint Server 2010, these values change to 2,000 site collections for the warning and 5,000 site collections for the limit. To avoid errors during upgrade or broken sites after upgrade, we recommend that you move some site collections into separate databases. If you have multiple content databases, you can also speed up your upgrade process by upgrading multiple databases in parallel.

For more information about site collection limits, see [SharePoint Server 2010 capacity management: Software boundaries and limits](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6a13cd9f-4b44-40d6-85aa-c70a8e5c34fe(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6a13cd9f-4b44-40d6-85aa-c70a8e5c34fe\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/6a13cd9f-4b44-40d6-85aa-c70a8e5c34fe(Office.14).aspx)). For more information about moving site collections to a new database, see [Move site collections to a new database \(split a content database\) \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc825328(office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc825328\(office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc825328(office.12).aspx)).

Address large ACLs

Using item-level permissions frequently can result in large access control list (ACL) entries, which can in turn create performance problems on your servers. For information about this issue and for tips on how to handle lots of users, see [Knowledge Base Article 953132: How to add lots of users to a site, to a list, or to a document library in Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 and in SharePoint Server 2007](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182327) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182327>).

Remove extraneous document versions

Large numbers of document versions can slow down an upgrade significantly. If you do not have to keep multiple versions, you can have users delete them manually or use the object model to find and remove them. For more information about how to programmatically remove extraneous versions, see [Versions Web Service](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182330) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182330>) on MSDN.

Remove unused templates, features, and Web Parts

First, verify that no sites are using the template, feature, or Web Part. You can use the pre-upgrade checker (**Stsadm -o preupgradecheck**) and the **Stsadm -o EnumAllWebs** operation to identify these customizations in your environment. Both of these operations were updated in the October 2009 Cumulative Update (CU) and now identify Web Parts, features, event handlers, and setup files that are being used in your environment. The pre-upgrade checker specifies which server-side files exist in your

environment and how many times they are used. The **EnumAllWebs** command specifies which files are used by which sites.

For more information about how to identify customizations in your environment, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). If customizations are not being used, delete them.

For more information about how to manage these kinds of customizations, see [Features and Templates \(http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182338\)](#) and [Solutions and Web Part Packages \(http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182332\)](#) on MSDN.

Repair data issues

Make sure that you repair any issues in your databases or site content before you upgrade. In particular, check the following items:

- **Check databases for corrupted data**

Clean up your databases to remove any orphaned sites or other corrupted data, such as a corrupted list. Consider defragmenting if you have removed sites or subsites from the database. For more information, see:

- [Databaserepair: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\) \(http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263282\(Office.12\).aspx\)](#)
- [Forcedeletelist: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\) \(http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262609.aspx\)](#)

- **Check databases for duplicate or orphaned site collections**

Make sure that site collections exist in only one content database. Occasionally, site collections can leave behind duplicate or orphaned references in old content databases if they are moved to new ones, or if a duplicate copy of a database was attached to the farm, or if there was an error when a site collection was provisioned. If a site collection is referenced in more than one content database or there is more than one instance of the site collection in a content database, it can cause issues when you upgrade by using the database attach upgrade method. If you upgrade a duplicate version of the site collection first, the site map in your configuration database might end up pointing to that version of the site rather than the current version.

Before you upgrade, use the pre-upgrade checker tool to identify all site collections and look for any duplicate or orphaned sites – any sites with the same URL or the same GUID as another site. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). Also, use the `enumallwebs` operation in `Stsadm.exe` to find out which sites are in which content databases and compare the results. For more information, see [Enumallwebs: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\) \(http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789634\(office.12\).aspx\)](#). If you find duplicate or orphaned sites, you can use the `deletesite` operation in `Stsadm.exe` to remove the duplicate or orphaned sites from the database. To delete a site from a specific content database, use the following command:

```
Stsadm -o deletesite -force -siteid <SiteID> -database <databasename> -databaseserver  
<Servername>
```

For more information, see [Deletesite: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc261873(office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc261873\(office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc261873(office.12).aspx)).

- **Check variations**

In publishing environments, check for any variations that must be fixed. For more information, see [Variationsfixuptool: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789658(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789658\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789658(Office.12).aspx)).

Making structural changes

If you want to make structural changes to your environment, such as moving site collections around or changing how your databases are allocated, you can use the following methods:

- **Stsadm -o mergecontentdbs** Use this to move site collections between databases. Upgrade is most efficient when databases contain similar data. Therefore, it is best if any site collections that share a content database are similar types. You can also use this operation to divide large databases if they contain multiple site collections. This can also help increase upgrade efficiency.

For more information, see [Mergecontentdbs: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262923(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262923\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262923(Office.12).aspx)).

- **Export and import sites** Use this method to move subwebs or site collections within a farm or between farms. For more information, see [Import and export: Stsadm operations \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262465(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262465\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262465(Office.12).aspx)).

Troubleshoot upgrade issues (SharePoint Server 2010)

Even after you test the upgrade process to identify potential issues, you might experience unexpected issues during an upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. If you experience issues after upgrade, the sooner you detect and fix them, the better the end-user experience will be.

This article describes general principles for identifying and addressing upgrade issues, and includes a list of common issues. After you have identified and addressed the issues, you can resume upgrade. For more information about how to resume upgrade, see [Resume upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In this article:

- [General principles for identifying issues](#)
- [Common issues](#)
 - [Missing or deprecated server-side files or customizations](#)
 - [Incorrectly configured or missing settings for server farm, Web application, or services](#)
 - [Inconsistent or incorrect update levels](#)
 - [Missing global navigation for blogs](#)
 - [Data issues](#)
 - [UI changes](#)
 - [Lack of space](#)
 - [Forms-based authentication](#)
 - [Security and permissions](#)
 - [.Stp files are not working after upgrade](#)
 - [Cannot find new versions of the Fabulous 40 application templates](#)
 - [Upgrading data from SharePoint Portal Server 2003: pre-upgrade checker reports corrupted databases](#)

General principles for identifying issues

Start by checking the upgrade status to see where upgrade stopped (if it did stop), and check log files to find any errors or warnings. Next, address the issues that you find before you resume the upgrade.

First, check upgrade status and log files

Upgrade status indicators and log files should give you an indication of what went wrong during the upgrade process. We recommend that you carefully review all the errors that were logged in the

upgrade log files. Warnings might not always indicate an issue, but you should review them all to determine whether any of them are likely to cause even more issues.

1. Check upgrade status by doing one or both of the following:

- Review the Upgrade Status page in the SharePoint Central Administration Web site.
- Use the Stsadm.exe operation **localupgradestatus** to check upgrade status.

For more information about how to check upgrade status, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

2. Review the following log files:

- The Setup.exe log file.
- The SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard (Psconfig.exe) log file.
- The upgrade error log file and the upgrade log file (which contains more detailed information than the upgrade error log file).
- ULS or trace log files.

These files are stored in the %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web Server Extensions\14\LOGS folder and are named *Servername_YYYYMMDD-MMSS.log*.

- The application event log file.

This file can be viewed by using the Event Viewer.

For more information about the Setup.exe, PSconfig.exe, and upgrade log files, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). For more information about the trace log file, see [Trace Logs](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=182380>) on MSDN.

Then, address issues in order

Some issues have more effect than others. For example, a missing server-side file can cause many seemingly unrelated errors at the site level.

Address issues in the following order:

1. Missing server-side files or customizations, such as features or Web Parts.
2. Configuration issues in the server farm, Web application, or services, such as managed paths or services that are not started.
3. Additional issues that you discover on a site-by-site basis, starting with high-impact, high-profile sites.

As you identify and fix the top-level issues, you can try running upgrade again to see whether any issues further along in the upgrade process have also been fixed.

Common issues

Check to see whether any of the following issues are causing an upgrade error or warning.

Missing or deprecated server-side files or customizations

One common error during upgrade is missing server-side files — either files that were installed with Office SharePoint Server 2007 or customized files. When you prepared for upgrade, you should have created an inventory of the server-side customizations (such as site definitions, templates, features, Web Parts, assemblies) that your sites required. (The pre-upgrade checker can help identify these items.) Check this inventory to make sure that all the files that are needed for your customizations are installed in your upgrade environment.

If you are performing a database attach upgrade, you can use the `test-spcontentdatabase` Windows PowerShell cmdlet before you upgrade the database to identify any missing files. You can also use the `enumallwebs` operation in `Stsadm.exe` to identify server-side customizations that are being used.

In the upgrade log files, you may see errors such as the following:

- ERROR Found Reference Count web(s) using missing web template Site Template Identifier (Icid: Site Template Language Code) in ContentDatabase Content Database Name.
- ERROR Found a missing feature Id = *[Feature Identifier]*
- ERROR File *[Relative File Path]* is referenced *[Reference Count]* times in the database, but is not installed on the current farm.
- WARNING WebPart class *[Web Part Identifier]* is referenced *[Reference Count]* times in the database, but is not installed on the current farm.
- WARNING Assembly *[Assembly Path]* is referenced in the database, but is not installed on the current farm.
- WARNING Feature could not be upgraded. Exception: Feature definition id '*Feature Identifier*' could not be found.

If you can obtain a missing server-side file or dependency, install it and then run upgrade again for the affected sites. If the file or dependency (such as a Web Part) has been deprecated, you have to investigate whether you want to rebuild the site, page, or Web Part to use a different template, feature, or Web Part. If you can redo the customization by using dependencies that have not been deprecated, you can run upgrade again for the affected sites. If you cannot remove the dependency, you cannot upgrade the site.

After you install the missing file or dependency, use the `test-SPContentDatabase` Windows PowerShell cmdlet on a test server to determine whether any other files for that database are missing. If you only run the pre-upgrade checker or run upgrade again, the error might not appear in the log files, even though it might still be occurring.

Incorrectly configured or missing settings for server farm, Web application, or services

Verify your farm and Web application settings, and create and start any missing services.

Verify that any managed paths (included or excluded paths) are configured correctly for each Web application.

In the upgrade log files, you may see errors such as the following:

- ERROR Template *Template Id*: SPSite Id=*Site Id* could not be accessed due to exception. Skipping SPWeb Id=*Web Id* for template upgrade. Exception: System.IO.FileNotFoundException: The site with the id *Site Id* could not be found.

This error indicates that a managed path is missing. Add the managed path for the site collection into the Web application and restart upgrade for the content database that contains this site collection.

Inconsistent or incorrect update levels

You must be running Office SharePoint Server 2007 with Service Pack 2 to run upgrade. If you do not meet this minimum requirement, you will see an error and upgrade will not run.

In addition, your servers must be updated correctly. For example, if you have applied the Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 version of an update, but not the Office SharePoint Server 2007 version of the update, upgrade will not run. The version number for Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 is displayed on the Servers in Farm page in SharePoint Central Administration. The version number for Office SharePoint Server 2007 is the version number of the file Microsoft.SharePoint.portal.dll in the %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web server extensions\12\ISAPI folder. The version numbers on the Servers in Farm page and for the Microsoft.SharePoint.portal.dll files must match, and must be at 12.0.6420.1000 or higher to upgrade. For more information, see [Deploy software updates for Office SharePoint Server 2007](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263467(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263467\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263467(Office.12).aspx)).

Missing global navigation for blogs

Another common error is the global navigation is missing for upgraded blogs. This occurs because the MySiteNavigation (6adff05c-d581-4c05-a6b9-920f15ec6fd9) feature is not enabled during the upgrade. To enable this feature, run the **Enable-SPFeature** Windows PowerShell 2.0 cmdlet.

For more information, see [Enable-SPFeature](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9b68c192-b640-4cb8-8a92-a98008169b27(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9b68c192-b640-4cb8-8a92-a98008169b27\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9b68c192-b640-4cb8-8a92-a98008169b27(Office.14).aspx)).

Data issues

The following data issues can cause errors or warnings during upgrade:

- Connectivity to data sources. If your servers cannot connect to the databases, they cannot be upgraded.
- Orphaned sites or lists, or other database corruptions. For more information, see [Cleaning up your environment before upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- Hidden column data. If the upgrade process adds a column to a list, and a custom column that has that same name already exists in the list, the custom column is renamed. After upgrade, you might have to readjust your views to include the renamed column.

In the upgrade log files, you may see errors such as the following:

- WARNING The orphaned sites could cause upgrade failures.
- ERROR Database [*Content Database Name*] contains a site (Id = [*Site Collection Identifier*], Url = [*Site Collection URL*]) that is not found in the site map.

Fix any orphaned items or database corruptions, and then run upgrade again.

UI changes

Changes to the user interface (UI), such as the addition of the Fluent UI (also known as the ribbon) or adherence to XHTML standards, can cause problems in sites. Occasionally, custom elements (such as a content type) may have a name that conflicts with a name in the new version. You may also have pages that must be reverted to the standard site definition, or large lists for which you have to create new views.

For more information about how to review UI issues in sites, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In the upgrade log files, you may see errors such as the following:

- Failed to activate site collection features on site Site Url. Exception: A duplicate content type name "*name*" was found.

This error indicates that a 3rd party "Summary Info" content type was added to the specified site in o12 and during upgrade to o14 it name conflicts with our out of the box "Summary Info" content type. Delete or rename the 3rd party content type in the specified site to something other than "Summary Info" and re-run upgrade.

Lack of space

If you run out of space (for example, for transaction log files on your database servers), upgrade cannot continue. Free some space, or increase the size of the transaction log file before you resume upgrade.

For more information, see [Managing the Size of the Transaction Log File](#)

(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=124882>).

Forms-based authentication

Additional steps are necessary if you are upgrading an environment that uses forms-based authentication. Follow the steps in [Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) to upgrade forms-based authentication providers.

Security and permissions

If you receive an error about an unknown account, or if a database is not upgraded, verify the following:

- For an in-place upgrade, make sure that the account that you use to run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard is a member of the **db_owner** fixed database role for all the databases that

you want to upgrade. If it is not a member of this role, you might see an error about an unknown user account when the wizard starts to upgrade the databases.

- For a database attach upgrade, if you are moving databases between instances of SQL Server, make sure that you verify that security is configured correctly. Check that the accounts that you are using have the appropriate fixed roles and permissions on the databases, and that they will still be valid accounts if you are upgrading across domains.

.Stp files are not working after upgrade

Site templates (.stp files) are deprecated in SharePoint Server 2010 and cannot be used to create new sites. Existing sites that are based on .stp files will continue to function as usual. Solution packages (.wsp files) are the supported method for creating sites that are based on a template in SharePoint Server 2010. You can convert an .stp file to a .wsp file to continue to use the template after upgrade.

▶ To convert an .stp file to a .wsp file

1. In Office SharePoint Server 2007, create a site that is based on the template, and then upgrade the site to SharePoint Server 2010.
2. In SharePoint Server 2010, on the **Site Actions** menu in the upgraded site, click **Site Settings**.
3. On the Site Settings page, under **Site Actions**, click **Save site as template**.
4. On the Save as Template page, enter a **File name** and **Template name**, and then click **OK**.

The site template is saved as a .wsp file to the Solutions Gallery for that site collection and you can create new sites that are based on that solution.

Cannot find new versions of the Fabulous 40 application templates

Many people have used the "Fabulous 40" templates that were created for Windows SharePoint Services 3.0. Some of these templates were created as site admin templates (.stp files) and some were created as server admin templates (.wsp files). Microsoft is not releasing new versions of these templates for SharePoint 2010 Products. Also, .stp files are deprecated and cannot be used to create new sites when you upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010.

You can upgrade sites that are based on these templates. However, you should try to upgrade these sites in a test environment before you upgrade the production environment so that you can discover any potential issues. Use the pre-upgrade checker to discover any issues. (Some people have seen problems with custom workflows or CAML-based views in the templates.) Note that after upgrade, you will be unable to use .stp files to create new templates.

The following table describes how the templates can be used.

| Type of template | Can I upgrade sites that are based on this template? | Can I use the template after upgrade? |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| Site admin (.stp file or site template) | Yes | No |
| Server admin (.wsp file or solution package) | Yes* | Yes* |

*There are issues with some .wsp files after upgrade. In particular, after upgrade, some customers cannot create new sites that are based on the following templates: Absence Request and Vacation Schedule Management, Call Center, Help Desk, IT Team Workspace, Knowledge Base, and Physical Asset Tracking and Management. If you have problems using any of these templates, you can post an issue to the [SharePoint 2010 – Setup, Upgrade, Administration and Operation TechNet Forum](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=201600) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=201600>), or contact Microsoft Customer Support.

If you want to continue to create sites that are based on the site admin templates (.stp files) in SharePoint Server 2010, you must convert them to solution packages (.wsp files). For more information, see the section [.Stp files are not working after upgrade](#) earlier in this article.

Upgrading data from SharePoint Portal Server 2003: pre-upgrade checker reports corrupted databases

When a content database in an Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm was upgraded from a Microsoft Office SharePoint Portal Server 2003 content database, you might see the following error when you run the pre-upgrade checker:

Failed : Content database with modified database schemas

If you did not make any manual schema changes to the database, you can ignore this error and continue with the upgrade. This is a residual error from the upgrade process from SharePoint Portal Server 2003 to Office SharePoint Server 2007. For more information, see the Microsoft Knowledge Base article [954772](http://support.microsoft.com/kb/954772) (<http://support.microsoft.com/kb/954772>).

See Also

[Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

[Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

[Resume upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Recovering after a failed upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

If the upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 has failed and you do not have time to continue to troubleshoot the issues or resume the upgrade process, you have to recover your Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment. The steps differ depending on the type of backup you have. If you were performing a database attach upgrade and you kept your original environment available — either by using read-only databases or by taking the environment offline — you can recover your environment easily. If you were performing an in-place upgrade, you must recover your entire environment and restore the data.

If you do have time, you should troubleshoot the issues and resume upgrade. For more information, see [Troubleshoot upgrade issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) and [Resume upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In this article:

- [Recovering when you have read-only databases on a standby environment \(database attach upgrade\)](#)
- [Recovering when you have a full environment backup \(in-place upgrade\)](#)
- [Recovering when you have database backups \(in-place upgrade\)](#)

Recovering when you have read-only databases in a standby environment (database attach upgrade)

When you perform a database attach upgrade, you can choose to leave your existing environment available, but with the databases set to read-only. Recovering when you are in this state is the simplest recovery path, because your original environment is still available, it is merely set to read-only. If you have to recover your environment, you can merely switch the databases to read/write again and resume serving requests. The article [Run a farm that uses read-only databases \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd793608\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd793608(Office.12).aspx)) describes the steps you take to set a farm to use read-only databases. To return the read-only farm to full operations, you set the Database Read-Only entry back to False, and then re-enable the timer jobs listed in the article.

Recovering when you have a full environment backup (in-place upgrade)

If you created a full backup of your environment before you started the upgrade process, you can restore that full backup to recover your environment.

For more information about how to restore from a full backup, see [Restore a farm by using built-in tools \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262426(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262426\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262426(Office.12).aspx)).

Recovering when you have database backups (in-place upgrade)

If you only created backups of your content and Shared Services Provider (SSP) databases, you can still recover your environment, but it will take longer and involve more steps. You basically have to build out your environment again and then restore the database backups. For more information about how to recover an environment and restore backed up content databases, see [Restore a farm after a configuration database problem \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc512815(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc512815\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc512815(Office.12).aspx)).

Resume upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

In some cases, you might have to restart upgrade to finish upgrading your sites from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. For example:

- During an in-place upgrade, if the server restarts or the upgrade fails, you must restart the upgrade process by using Psconfig.exe to upgrade the remaining sites.
- During a database attach upgrade, any sites that cannot be upgraded will be skipped. After you have corrected any issues in the sites (such as a missing template or language pack, or the site being set to read-only or having exceeded its quota), you can restart upgrade by using a Windows PowerShell command to upgrade just the skipped sites.



Note:

One frequent cause of failures during upgrade is that the environment is missing customized features, solutions, or other elements. Be sure that any custom elements that you need are installed on your front-end Web servers before you begin the upgrade process. You can use the pre-upgrade checker — and, for a database attach upgrade, the **test-spcontentdatabase** Windows PowerShell cmdlet — to identify any custom elements that your sites might be using. For more information, see [Identify and install customizations](#) in the article "Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues."

In this article:

- [Restart upgrade for a server farm by using Psconfig.exe](#)
- [Restart upgrade for a database by using Windows PowerShell](#)

Restart upgrade for a server farm by using Psconfig.exe

If you determine that upgrade stopped or failed before the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard was completed, you can restart the upgrade from that point by running the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard again or by using a command line operation. This process is also known as *forcing* a software upgrade. Be sure to research and address the problem that caused the failure or stoppage before you restart upgrade.

▶ To restart upgrade for the server farm

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To use Psconfig.exe, you must be a member of the local Administrators group on the server.

-
2. Open a Command Prompt window and navigate to the following directory:
`%COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft shared\Web server extensions\14\Bin\`
 3. Type the following command:

psconfig -cmd upgrade -inplace v2v -passphrase <passphrase> -wait

There is an optional parameter, **-force**, that can force the upgrade to continue if the command does not work. Add **-force** to the end of the command string to force the upgrade process to continue.



Note:

You can enable Windows Installer logging before you start the software upgrade installation again. To enable logging for Windows Installer, see [Microsoft Knowledge Base article 99206: How to enable Windows Installer logging](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=99206) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=99206>).

Restart upgrade for a database by using Windows PowerShell

If the upgrade skipped any site collections during in-place upgrade or database attach upgrade, you can restart the upgrade process for the database that contains that site collection by using a Windows PowerShell cmdlet.

▶ To restart upgrade for a database by using Windows PowerShell

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt (PS C:\>), type the following command:

upgrade-spcontentdatabase -id <GUID>

Where *GUID* is the identifier for the database. You can run the following cmdlet to find the GUID for a content database:

Get-SPContentDatabase -Identity <content_database_name>

For more information, see [Upgrade-SPContentDatabase](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9c7f1a52-02a7-452d-9746-a4e89aa54874(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9c7f1a52-02a7-452d-9746-a4e89aa54874\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9c7f1a52-02a7-452d-9746-a4e89aa54874(Office.14).aspx)).

Perform pre-upgrade steps (SharePoint Server 2010)

After you have planned your upgrade process to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you can start the upgrade process by following the required pre-upgrade steps.

In this section:

- [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

The pre-upgrade checker identifies potential upgrade issues in your environment. Run this as you plan your upgrade and before you start the upgrade process, so that you can address these issues.

- [Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Create a full backup of your environment to ensure that you can recover if upgrade does not go as planned.

Run the pre-upgrade checker (SharePoint Server 2010)

You can use the pre-upgrade checker to report on the status of your environment and SharePoint sites before you upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. We highly recommend that the server administrator run the pre-upgrade checker and resolve as many problems as possible before scheduling the upgrade.

The pre-upgrade checker is an Stsadm operation that you run in a Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment to find any potential issues for upgrade and to review recommendations and best practices. The operation is available with Office SharePoint Server 2007 Service Pack 2 and has been updated in the October 2009 Cumulative Update for Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 and Office SharePoint Server 2007. You can download and install the October 2009 Cumulative Update from [October 2009 Cumulative Update Packages for SharePoint Server 2007 and Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 are published](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=169179) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=169179>).



Note:

You might need to run the pre-upgrade checker more than once. For example, if you run the tool to evaluate your server farm but do not perform the upgrade for a few weeks, you can run the tool again just before you perform the upgrade to scan any new sites and to ensure that no additional issues have appeared in the meantime.

In this article:

- [About the pre-upgrade checker report](#)
- [Run the pre-upgrade checker](#)



Note:

One frequent cause of failures during upgrade is that the environment is missing customized features, solutions, or other elements. Be sure that any custom elements you need are installed on your front-end Web servers before you begin the upgrade process. You can use the pre-upgrade checker — and, for a database attach upgrade, the **test-spcontentdatabase** Windows PowerShell cmdlet — to identify any custom elements that your sites might be using. For more information, see [Identify and install customizations](#) in the article "Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues."

About the pre-upgrade checker report

The pre-upgrade checker reports information about the status of your environment and the SharePoint sites in that environment, including:

- **Upgrade readiness and supported paths** Returns a list of all servers and components in the farm and information about whether the servers meet requirements for upgrading.

-
- **Alternate access mapping settings** Returns a list of the alternate access mapping URLs that are being used in the farm.
 - **Installed elements** Returns a list of all site definitions, site templates, features, and language packs that are installed in the farm. You need to know which site templates have been installed or used so that you can verify that they are available after an upgrade or database attach. You also need to know which elements have been customized so you can verify the customizations again after the upgrade. For example, you need to know whether a site depends on a language pack for Office SharePoint Server 2007 that does not exist yet for SharePoint Server 2010, so you can plan how to handle that site during upgrade.
 - **Unsupported customizations** Reports whether any server-side customizations that are not supported (such as database schema modifications) exist in the farm.
 - **Orphaned objects** Lists any database or site orphans in the farm. Objects such as list items, lists, documents, Web sites, and site collections can become orphaned — that is, the objects exist but are not associated with a particular site. Because orphaned objects do not work in the previous version, they won't work after the upgrade. If you perform an in-place upgrade, the orphaned items will still exist, but will not work. We recommend that you repair any orphaned objects before upgrading.



Tip:

Members of the Administrators group on the front-end Web servers can repair orphaned items before the upgrade by following the steps in Knowledge Base article 918744, [Description of a new command-line operation that you can use to repair content databases in Windows SharePoint Services](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=69958&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=69958&clcid=0x409>).

- **Valid configuration settings** Reports any missing or invalid configuration settings (such as a missing Web.config file, invalid host names, or invalid service accounts) that exist in the farm.
- **Database requirements** Reports whether the databases meet the requirements for upgrade — for example, databases are set to read/write, and any databases and site collections that are stored in the Windows Internal Database are not larger than 4 GB.

Use the information gathered from the pre-upgrade checker to determine:

- Whether to perform an in-place upgrade or a database attach upgrade. [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) provides information to help you decide which type of upgrade to perform. It is important to consider the report generated by the pre-upgrade checker when you make this decision. If your servers do not meet the requirements for in-place upgrade, you need to consider performing a database attach upgrade.
- Whether to upgrade some or all site collections that contain customized sites.
- Which sites need to have customizations reapplied or redone after upgrade and therefore might take longer than others in the review stage.

A worksheet is available so you can record information about your environment while you prepare for upgrade. Download the worksheet from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928> (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928>).

Run the pre-upgrade checker

Before you perform this procedure, confirm that:

- Your system is running Office SharePoint Server 2007 with Service Pack 2

▶ To run the pre-upgrade checker

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To use Stsadm, you must be a member of the local Administrators group on the server.
2. Click **Start**, right-click **Command Prompt**, and then click **Run as administrator**.
3. In the Command Prompt window, navigate to the following directory:
%COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web Server Extensions\12\bin
4. Type the following command and press ENTER:

STSADM.EXE -o preupgradecheck

This command checks both the local server and your farm-level settings. For a list of other parameters you can use with this operation, see [Preupgradecheck: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789638(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789638\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789638(Office.12).aspx)). For a list of rules included in the pre-upgrade checker, see [Pre-upgrade scanning and reporting for future releases \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd793609(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd793609\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd793609(Office.12).aspx)).

After you run the pre-upgrade checker, the report automatically opens in your default browser. You can also view the report by opening it from its location in the %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web Server Extensions\12\LOGS directory. The report is named in the following format: PreUpgradeCheck_YYYYMMDD-HHMMSS-SSS-random-number.htm, where YYYYMMDD is the date and HHMMSS-SSS is the time (hours in 24-hour clock format, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds), and the random number is used to differentiate between possible simultaneous attempts to run the pre-upgrade checker. There are also TXT and XML versions of the report in the same location.

Use the report to find and troubleshoot issues. You can also share the relevant results with other members of the upgrade team. For example, you can report issues such as customized site templates or custom Web Parts to the appropriate site owner, Web designer, or developer before scheduling the upgrade, to give them time to resolve the issues.

Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

To ensure that you can recover the existing environment in case something goes wrong during the upgrade process, you must back up the Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment before you run the upgrade process.

If you are running Office SharePoint Server 2007 in a Hyper-V virtual environment, see [Using SharePoint Products and Technologies in a Hyper-V virtual environment](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=125834&clcid=0x409>).

Back up the environment

You can do a full backup of the Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment. We recommend that you perform a full backup of the farm before upgrading.

To back up the Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment, use the procedures described in [Back up a farm by using built-in tools \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=105986&clcid=0x409>).

If you have deployed customizations, you must also back up the customizations. For more information, see [Back up and restore customizations \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=186626>).

Test the backups

You have to be sure that these backups are valid so that you can recover if there is a hardware failure or data corruption during the upgrade process. To test the backups, set up a non-production Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm, restore the backups and install any customizations (such as site definitions, Web Parts, and so on), and then verify that the restored backup is functional.

To do this, use the procedures described in [Restore a farm by using built-in tools \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=105987&clcid=0x409>).

See Also

[Back up and restore a farm \(Office SharePoint Server 2007\)](#)
(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=186629&clcid=0x409>)

Perform an in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

Now that you have learned about the upgrade process by reading the articles in [About the upgrade process \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), and planned for your upgrade by following the steps in the articles in [Plan and prepare for upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), you are ready to perform the in-place upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. You can use the steps in this section for both a trial upgrade and your actual in-place upgrade on your production farm.

In this section:

- [Checklist for in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Use this checklist to make sure that you follow all necessary steps as you prepare for upgrade, perform the upgrade, and perform post-upgrade steps.
- [Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
Get all the steps that you need to perform an in-place upgrade, from installing prerequisites to upgrading sites.
- [Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Understand the process for using the detach databases hybrid approach to upgrade. This approach combines an in-place upgrade with the efficiency and speed of upgrading multiple databases at the same time.
- [Install available language template packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Install any language packs that you need for your environment, after you run Setup and before you run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard.

Checklist for in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

This article contains a checklist you can use to make sure that you followed all necessary steps as you prepare for upgrade, perform the upgrade, and perform post-upgrade steps.

In this article:

- [Prepare for upgrade](#)
- [Perform the upgrade](#)
- [Perform post-upgrade steps](#)

Some of the steps include notes about the amount of time the steps might take. These are rough estimates only, to give you a relative idea of the duration of the step. To find out how much time each step will take for your environment, we recommend that you perform trial upgrades in a test environment. For more information, see [Estimate how long the upgrade process will take and the space that you need \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) and [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Prepare for upgrade

Follow these steps in order before you begin an in-place upgrade:


| Pre-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade | | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| [] | Run the pre-upgrade checker Run the pre-upgrade checker and address any issues. Use the report that is generated by the tool to fill out the Upgrade planning worksheet. Detailed steps: Run the pre-upgrade checker (SharePoint Server 2010) . | Perform this step multiple times as you clean up your environment and test your upgrade process. Running the checker takes only a few minutes, but addressing any issues might take days or weeks. |
| [] | Clean up your environment Before you begin the upgrade, make sure that your environment functions in a healthy state and that you clean up any content that you do not have to keep. Remove or repair any orphaned sites or data, address any large lists or large access control lists (ACLs), remove extraneous document versions, and remove any unused templates, features, or Web Parts. | Perform this step once for the whole environment. This process might take days or weeks to complete. |

| Pre-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade | | Notes |
|---|--|--|
| | Detailed steps: Cleaning up your environment before upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010) . | |
| [] | <p>Record settings for user profile synchronization</p> <p>Record the settings used for user profile synchronization in your previous environment in the upgrade worksheet. You will apply them to your new environment when you create and enable the User Profile Synchronization service. Record settings for connections, property mappings, and filters.</p> | Perform this step once for the whole environment. |
| [] | <p>Record blocked file types</p> <p>Blocked file types are not preserved during upgrade. Copy the list of blocked file types and save the list in the upgrade worksheet so you can reapply the settings after upgrade.</p> | Perform this step once for the whole environment. |
| [] | <p>Back up your environment</p> <p>Back up your entire environment to ensure that you can recover the existing environment in case something goes wrong during the upgrade process.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step once for the whole environment.</p> <p>This step can take an hour, several hours, or longer, depending on your data set and your environment.</p> |

Perform the upgrade

Follow these steps in order during an in-place upgrade. Steps required for in-place upgrade with detached databases are also included.

| Perform the in-place upgrade | | Notes |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| [] | <p>Run the pre-upgrade checker</p> <p>Run the pre-upgrade checker again to identify any new or remaining issues before you start the upgrade.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Run the pre-upgrade checker (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | Running the checker takes only a few minutes, but addressing any issues might take longer. |
| [] | <p>Install prerequisites on all servers</p> <p>Before you can upgrade, you must run the prerequisite installer successfully on each Web server that has Office SharePoint Server 2007 installed.</p> | Perform this step on each Web server and application server in your environment. |

| Perform the in-place upgrade | Notes |
|---|--|
| <p>Detailed steps: Install prerequisites in the "Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010" article.</p> | |
| <p>[] Detach databases (in-place upgrade with detached databases only)</p> <p>If you are performing an in-place upgrade with detached databases, detach the databases before you run Setup.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database and Shared Services Provider (SSP) database in your environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Disconnect users</p> <p>If you are upgrading a server farm, disconnect all the users from the server farm by stopping the World Wide Web Publishing Service (W3SVC) on all Web servers.</p> | <p>Perform this step on each Web server in your environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Run Setup on all servers</p> <p>Run Setup on all servers to upgrade the software.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Run Setup on all servers in the "Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010" article.</p> | <p>Perform this step on each Web server and application server in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take a few minutes or more than an hour, depending on how many servers are in your environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Install language packs</p> <p>Install any language packs you need before you run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Install available language template packs (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step on each Web server in your environment.</p> <p>This step should take only a few minutes per Web server.</p> |
| <p>[] Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard</p> <p>If you are upgrading a server farm, first run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on the server that is running SharePoint Central Administration, pause and run the wizard on the other servers in the farm, and then return to the first server to complete the wizard.</p> <p> Important:</p> <p>You must upgrade SharePoint Central Administration before you attempt to upgrade any other content in the farm. Completing the wizard on the server running SharePoint Central Administration allows you to do so.</p> | <p>Perform this step on each Web server and application server in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour or more.</p> |

| Perform the in-place upgrade | Notes |
|---|--|
| <p>Detailed steps: Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard in the "Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010" article.</p> | |
| <p>[] Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application (in-place upgrade with detached databases only)</p> <p>For Web applications that were configured to use forms-based authentication or Web single sign-on (Web SSO) authentication, you must perform additional steps before you attach and upgrade the databases. First, you convert the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications to claims authentication. After you convert the Web applications to claims authentication, you configure your Web application zones for forms-based authentication (or Web SSO authentication, as appropriate). Then, you can migrate users and permissions to SharePoint Server 2010.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step now if you are following the in-place upgrade with detached databases approach. If you are following a standard in-place upgrade approach, perform this step after upgrade is completed.</p> <p>Perform this step for any Web applications that used forms-based authentication in Office SharePoint Server 2007.</p> |
| <p>[] Attach databases (in-place upgrade with detached databases only)</p> <p>If you are performing an in-place upgrade with detached databases, attach the databases and then upgrade the data.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database and SSP database in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or days, depending on your data set, whether you are upgrading multiple databases in parallel, and the hardware on the Web servers, database servers, and storage subsystem.</p> |
| <p>[] Monitor upgrade progress</p> <p>Use the Upgrade Status page in SharePoint Central Administration to monitor progress as your sites are upgraded.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step once for the whole environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or days, depending on your data set.</p> |

Perform post-upgrade steps

Perform the following steps in order after you perform an in-place upgrade.

| Post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade | Notes |
|--|--|
| <p>[] Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application</p> <p>For Web applications that were configured to use forms-based authentication or Web single sign-on (Web SSO) authentication, you must perform additional steps after upgrading. First, you convert the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications to claims authentication. After you convert the Web applications to claims authentication, you configure your Web application zones for forms-based authentication (or Web SSO authentication, as appropriate). Then, you can migrate users and permissions to SharePoint Server 2010.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step for any Web applications that used forms-based authentication in Office SharePoint Server 2007.</p> |
| <p>[] Configure new and upgraded services after in-place upgrade</p> <p>Many new services are available in SharePoint Server 2010. You can enable these new services after you perform an in-place upgrade by using the Farm Configuration Wizard or by configuring them individually.</p> | <p>Perform this step once for your environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for User Profile services</p> <p>Data in profile properties in Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 that had multiple values was stored in the SSP database as part of the Profile Services data. For SharePoint Server 2010, this data must be converted to taxonomy data and be stored in the managed metadata database. When you upgrade, any photos that were stored as profile pictures must be updated. If you do not update the photo store data, either no photos will be displayed or some photos might appear distorted. You perform these actions from the command line by using Windows PowerShell cmdlets.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for Profile Services</p> | <p>Perform this step once for each User Profile service application in your environment.</p> <p>This step contains a lot of smaller steps. Depending on the complexity of your user profile data and your configuration, this might take an hour or several hours to complete.</p> |

| Post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade | Notes |
|--|--|
| <p>[] Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service</p> <p>The SSO service that was available in Office SharePoint Server 2007 has been replaced with the Secure Store service in SharePoint Server 2010. There is no direct upgrade path for the data and settings from SSO to the Secure Store service, but you can migrate data from the SSO database to a new Secure Store database. Excel Services Application needs the Secure Store service account to function correctly.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service</p> | <p>Perform this step for each Secure Store service application that needs data from a previous SSO service.</p> |
| <p>[] Upgrade solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog</p> <p>If your Business Data Catalog solution depended on the Web Parts that are provided by Office SharePoint Server 2007 and SharePoint Server 2010 by default (such as the Business Data List Web Part or the Business Data Actions Web Part), you must upgrade your solution to use the upgraded application definitions (called "BDC models") in the Business Data Connectivity service, because those Web Parts have been upgraded to use the new object model provided by the new service.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Upgrading solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog and Plan to upgrade to Business Connectivity Services (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step once for your entire environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites</p> <p>Review sites to be sure that they have been upgraded successfully and are ready for users to view.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step for every upgraded Web application and site collection in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or days, depending on your content.</p> <p>You should also have site owners review their sites and report any issues.</p> |
| <p>[] Start a full crawl</p> <p>After all content is upgraded and all settings are configured, you can start a full search crawl of your content. This might</p> | <p>Perform this step once for your entire environment.</p> <p>Performing a full crawl can take</p> |

| Post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade | Notes |
|---|--|
| take several hours or several days to complete, depending on how much content exists in your environment. | several hours or days to complete, depending on the amount of content in your environment. |

See Also

[Upgrade Worksheet for SharePoint 2010 Products](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928) (*http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928*)

Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010

When you run an in-place upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, the configuration data for the farm and all the content in the farm is upgraded on the existing hardware, in a fixed order. When you start the in-place upgrade process, Setup takes the Web server offline and the Web sites are unavailable until the upgrade is finished, and then Setup restarts the Web server. After you begin an in-place upgrade, you cannot pause the upgrade or roll back to the previous version.



Note:

One frequent cause of failures during upgrade is that the environment is missing customized features, solutions, or other elements. Be sure that any custom elements you have to have are installed on your front-end Web servers before you begin the upgrade process. You can use the pre-upgrade checker to identify any custom elements that your sites might be using. For more information, see [Identify and install customizations](#) in the article "Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues."



Important:

If you are running a stand-alone installation of SharePoint Server 2010, the User Profile Synchronization service is not available. If you need to synchronize user profiles with directory sources such as Active Directory, you must uninstall and reinstall in server farm mode.

You can also use many of the procedures in this article to perform a detach databases hybrid approach to upgrade, where you upgrade the server and infrastructure in place but upgrade the content databases by detaching and attaching them in parallel. For information about the detach databases process, see [Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). For more information about how to choose an upgrade approach, see [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) and [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).



Important:

You must be running Service Pack 2 (SP2) of Office SharePoint Server 2007 in a 64-bit Windows Server 2008 environment to perform an in-place upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010. If you are in a server farm environment, you must also be running a 64-bit version of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 with Service Pack 1 (SP1) and Cumulative Update 2, or SQL Server 2005 with SP3 and Cumulative Update 3.

In this article:

- [Process overview](#)
- [Before you begin](#)
- [Install prerequisites](#)
- [Run Setup on all servers](#)

-
- [Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard](#)
 - [Check upgrade status for sites](#)
 - [Verification](#)
 - [Additional steps](#)

Process overview

By using the procedures in this article, you install SharePoint Server 2010 and upgrade all of the SharePoint sites in the environment. We recommend that you try out the upgrade process on a test environment before you attempt to upgrade your production environment. For more information, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

When you upgrade a server farm, install and configure the new version to the servers in the following order:

1. Install SharePoint Server 2010 on all servers in the server farm.
2. Install any language packs for SharePoint Server 2010 that you need. For more information, see [Install available language template packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
3. Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on the front-end Web server that contains the SharePoint Central Administration Web site.

To determine which server is running SharePoint Central Administration, open the Servers in Farm page (http://server_name:adminport/_admin/farmservers.aspx) and note which server or servers have **Central Administration services** running. Perform this step before you install SharePoint Server 2010, while SharePoint Central Administration for Office SharePoint Server 2007 is still available.



Note:

If you have multiple servers that are running SharePoint Central Administration, pick one and use that as the initial server on which to run upgrade. After you have completed the process on that one, you can continue with any other servers that are running SharePoint Central Administration.

4. Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on the remaining front-end Web servers and application servers in the farm in any order.

For an overview and diagrams of the each upgrade approach, see [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).



Note:

If you are using the detach databases hybrid approach for upgrading, the process you follow is similar, but you detach all content databases before you run Setup, and then attach them again after you run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard. For more information about the detach databases upgrade approach, see [Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Before you begin

Before you begin the in-place upgrade, review the following information about permissions, hardware requirements, and software requirements and steps to perform before beginning the process.

- Make sure that you have run the pre-upgrade checker tool (**stsadm -o preupgradecheck**, available in Office SharePoint Server 2007 Service Pack 2 and updated in the October 2009 Cumulative Update) and addressed any issues before you begin the upgrade process. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- We recommend that you back up your environment before you begin the upgrade process. For more information, see [Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- Ensure that you have met all hardware and software requirements. You must have a 64-bit version of Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2. For server farms, you must also have a 64-bit version of SQL Server 2005 or SQL Server 2008. For more information about these requirements (such as specific updates that you must install), see [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)).
- Ensure that you are prepared to set up the required accounts by using appropriate permissions. For detailed information, see [Administrative and service accounts required for initial deployment \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx)).
- Ensure that the account that you use to run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard is a member of the **db_owner** fixed database role for all the databases that you want to upgrade.

Install prerequisites

Before you can upgrade, you must run the prerequisite installer successfully on each Web server that has Office SharePoint Server 2007 installed. A prerequisite installer is available to install software needed to support SharePoint Server 2010.

To run the prerequisite installer

1. From the product disc, open the installation folder and run PrerequisiteInstaller.exe.
The Microsoft SharePoint Products Preparation Tool opens.
2. Click **Next**.
3. On the License Terms page, select the **I accept the terms of the License Agreement(s)** check box, and then click **Next**.
The tool runs, installing and configuring required software.
4. Click **Next**.
5. On the Installation Complete screen, verify that each prerequisite is listed as successfully

installed or already installed.

6. Click **Finish** to close the wizard.

Run Setup on all servers

After all of the prerequisites are installed, you can run Setup.exe on all Web servers in your server farm.



Note:

If you are using the detach databases hybrid approach for upgrading, you should detach your content databases before you run Setup. For more information about how to detach databases, see [Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).



Important:

If you are running an in-place upgrade on a server farm, disconnect all the users from the server farm by stopping the World Wide Web Publishing Service (W3SVC) on all front-end Web servers. If you allow users in a server farm to connect after the files and databases have been updated on one Web server, but before the other Web servers have been updated, users will not be able to browse the Web sites.

▶ To install the new version

1. Run Setup.exe.
2. On the Enter your Product Key page, type your product key, and then click **Continue**.
3. On the Read the Microsoft Software License Terms page, review the terms, select the **I accept the terms of this agreement** check box, and then click **Continue**.
4. On the Upgrade earlier versions page, click **Install Now**.
5. Setup runs and installs SharePoint Server 2010.

On the completion page, clear the **Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard now** check box, and then click **Close**.

Before you run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, install any language template packs for SharePoint Server 2010. For more information, see [Install available language template packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard

If you are upgrading a single server, you can run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on only that server and start to upgrade content. If you are upgrading a server farm, first run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on the server that is running SharePoint Central Administration, pause and run the wizard on the other servers in the farm, and then return to the first server to complete the wizard. It is important to upgrade SharePoint Central Administration before you attempt to upgrade any

other content in the farm, and completing the wizard on the server that is running SharePoint Central Administration allows you to do so.

 **Important:**

Ensure that the account you use to run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard is a member of the **db_owner** fixed database role for all the databases that you want to upgrade. If it is not, you might see an error about an unknown user account when the wizard starts to upgrade the databases.

Be sure that you have installed any language template packs before you run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard.

 **Caution:**

After you run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, Office SharePoint Server 2007 will no longer be available. You cannot pause or roll back the setup and upgrade process. Be sure that you have a current and valid backup of your environment before you proceed with installing SharePoint Server 2010.

 **To run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard**

1. Click **Start**, point to **All Programs**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard**.

2. In the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, on the Welcome to SharePoint Products page, click **Next**.

A message appears, notifying you that Internet Information Services (IIS), the SharePoint Administration Services v4, and the SharePoint Timer Service v4 may need to be restarted or reset during configuration.

3. Click **Yes** to continue with the wizard.

4. On the Specify Farm Settings page, in the **Password** box, type a passphrase and in the **Confirm passphrase** box, type the same passphrase.

The passphrase should consist of at least eight characters and should contain characters from at least three of the following four groups:

- English uppercase characters (from A through Z)
- English lowercase characters (from a through z)
- Numerals (from 0 through 9)
- Nonalphabetic characters (such as !, \$, #, %)

5. On the Visual Upgrade page, select one of the following options:

- **Change existing SharePoint sites to use the new user experience. Administrators control the user experience for end users.**

This option allows you to change all sites over to the new user experience without

previewing that experience first. If you select this option, you can also choose between the following two options:

- **Preserve customized pages, but update template and application pages to use the new UI.**
- **Reset all customized pages to their original templates. This option will delete modifications from customized pages and cannot be undone.**
- **Preserve the look and feel of existing SharePoint sites, and allow end users to update their sites' user experience.**

This is the default option. This option allows the site owners to preview their sites in the new user experience and determine when they are ready to switch the sites over to the new user experience permanently.

6. On the Completing the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard page, verify the settings, and then click **Next**.

The SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard runs and configures the configuration database and SharePoint Central Administration for SharePoint Server 2010.

7. A message appears, notifying you that if you have a server farm with multiple servers, you must run Setup on each server to install new binary files before you continue the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard.

- If this is the only server in your farm, or if you have already run Setup on all the servers in your farm, click **OK** to continue with the wizard.
- If you have not yet run Setup on all the servers in your farm, run Setup on the remaining servers now, and then return to this server and click **OK** to continue with the wizard.

The SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard continues the upgrade process by setting up the configuration database and installing SharePoint Central Administration.

8. On the Configuration Successful, Upgrade in Progress page, review the settings that have been configured, and then click **Finish**.

The SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard closes and the Upgrade Status page opens. You might be prompted to enter your user name and password before the Upgrade Status page will open. The upgrade process might take awhile to complete, depending on how much data you have in your farm.

 **Note:**

If you are following the detach databases hybrid approach for upgrade, you can now begin to attach content databases to upgrade them. For more information, see [Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

9. If you are upgrading a server farm, you can now complete the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on the other servers in the farm.

Check upgrade status for sites

After the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard has finished, you can monitor the upgrade process for each site from the Upgrade Status page in SharePoint Central Administration or by using the **localupgradestatus** operation in Stsadm.exe. For more information, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

After upgrade is completed successfully for all sites, if you stopped the World Wide Web Publishing Service (W3SVC) on all front-end Web servers before the upgrade, manually start the World Wide Web Publishing Service on the front-end Web servers to make the Web servers available to users.



Note:

Search results might be incomplete or might not be returned for a few minutes after upgrade. This is because the Search Synchronization Timer job must run after upgrade, and search results are not available until the job has finished.

Verification

If upgrade fails or reports issues, you can refer to the log and error files for more information. For more information about how to review the log files and how to restart upgrade after a failure, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). If you are using Visual Upgrade, for more information about previewing sites and changing to the new user interface, see [Manage visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Additional steps

After you have completed the upgrade, there are several steps that you should take to complete the configuration for your upgraded farm. For more information, see [Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

See Also

[Troubleshoot upgrade issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases (SharePoint Server 2010)

When you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you can perform an in-place upgrade or a database attach upgrade, or you can combine certain aspects of both approaches to increase availability or throughput during the upgrade process. This article describes how to perform a hybrid approach that combines in-place upgrade with detaching and attaching databases so that you can upgrade multiple databases at the same time, possibly even on separate hardware. You can use this approach to upgrade two or more content databases at a time, and therefore upgrade more quickly than if you used a standard in-place upgrade (which upgrades individual content databases and site collections serially). This approach uses the following hybrid techniques:

- Use an in-place upgrade to upgrade the farm and settings.
- Detach and upgrade multiple databases in parallel.
- Alternative upgrade sequence: Upgrade databases on a temporary small farm.

Note that if you decide to use a temporary small farm to perform the actual upgrade, you must have direct access to the database servers to copy the databases from. Copying databases over the network takes time and bandwidth — make sure you test this process to determine whether you have the resources you need to use a temporary small farm.

For more information about the pros and cons of the different upgrade approaches, see [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). For a brief overview and graphical description of the steps you take for each approach, see [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).



Note:

One frequent cause of failures during upgrade is that the environment is missing customized features, solutions, or other elements. Be sure that any custom elements you need are installed on your front-end Web servers before you begin the upgrade process. You can use the pre-upgrade checker — and, for a database attach upgrade, the **test-spcontentdatabase** Windows PowerShell cmdlet — to identify any custom elements that your sites might be using. For more information, see [Identify and install customizations](#) in the article "Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues."

In this article:

- [Process overview](#)
- [Before you begin](#)
- [To detach databases and upgrade them in parallel on the same farm](#)
- [To detach databases and upgrade them in parallel on a temporary small farm](#)

-
- [Verification](#)
 - [Additional steps](#)



Important:

You must be running Service Pack 2 (SP2) of Office SharePoint Server 2007 in a 64-bit Windows Server 2008 environment to perform an in-place upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010. If you are in a server farm environment, you must also be running a 64-bit version of one of the following: Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 with Service Pack 1 (SP1) and Cumulative Update 2, and SQL Server 2005 with SP3 and Cumulative Update 3.

Process overview

Because this upgrade approach is a hybrid of the techniques used for in-place upgrade and database attach upgrade, this article describes how the steps from each approach fit together into the hybrid process. It does not provide details for every step in the process, because those steps are available in the following articles:

- [Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
- [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

These articles, combined with this roadmap, give you the information you need to perform this hybrid upgrade.

There are two ways in which you can perform this type of hybrid upgrade: using one farm throughout or using a temporary small farm to perform the actual upgrade. The sections below provide the steps you need to take to perform the upgrade by using each of these methods.

Before you begin

Before you begin the in-place upgrade, review the following information about permissions, hardware requirements, and software requirements and steps to perform before beginning the process.

- Be sure you have run the pre-upgrade checker tool (**stsadm -o preupgradecheck**, available in Office SharePoint Server 2007 Service Pack 2 and updated in the October 2009 Cumulative Update) and addressed any issues before you begin the upgrade process. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- We recommend that you back up your environment before you begin the upgrade process. For more information, see [Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- Ensure that you have met all hardware and software requirements. You must have a 64-bit version of Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2. For server farms, you must also have a 64-bit version of SQL Server 2005 or SQL Server 2008. For more information about these requirements (such as specific updates that you must install), see [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)).

- Ensure that you are prepared to set up the required accounts by using appropriate permissions. For detailed information, see [Administrative and service accounts required for initial deployment \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx)).

To detach databases and upgrade them in parallel on the same farm

This section describes the steps to take to use the detach databases upgrade approach on a single farm.

| Process for upgrading in-place with detached databases (same farm) |
|--|
| <p>Detach databases</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Use the following operation to detach the content databases: Stsadm.exe -o deletecontentdb -url http://servername-databasenameContentDatabaseName For more information about this operation, see Deletecontentdb: Stsadm operation (Office SharePoint Server) (http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262449(Office.12).aspx). |
| <p>Upgrade the farm in place</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Install all prerequisites to all servers in the farm.2. Run Setup on all servers in the farm.3. Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on all servers in the farm. <p>For detailed procedures that describe these steps, see Upgrade in place to SharePoint Server 2010.</p> |
| <p>Attach the databases and upgrade the content</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Add the content databases to the Web applications. Use the following Windows PowerShell cmdlet to add and upgrade the content databases: <pre>Mount-SPContentDatabase -Name <DatabaseName> -DatabaseServer <ServerName> - WebApplication <URL> [-Updateuserexperience]</pre>2. Verify upgrade for the first database.3. Repeat the restore-and-add-database procedures for remaining databases in parallel. <p>For detailed procedures that describe these steps, see Perform a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010.</p> |

To detach databases and upgrade them in parallel on a temporary small farm

This section describes the steps to take to use the detach databases upgrade approach on two farms: the original farm and a temporary small farm.

Process for upgrading in-place with detached databases (temporary small farm)

Set up a temporary small farm to use in upgrading the databases

For detailed procedures that describe these steps, see [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#).

2 - Detach databases from the original farm

1. Back up the previous version databases by using SQL Server tools.
For detailed procedures about backing up the databases, see [Perform a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).
2. Use the following operation to detach the content databases:
Stsadm.exe -o deletecontentdb -url http://servername-databasenameContentDatabaseName
For more information about this operation, see [Deletecontentdb: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262449\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262449(Office.12).aspx)).

Upgrade the original farm in place

1. Install all prerequisites to all servers in the farm.
 2. Run Setup on all servers in the farm.
 3. Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on all servers in the farm.
- For detailed procedures that describe these steps, see [Perform an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Attach the databases to the temporary small farm and upgrade the content

1. Restore the backup copy to the new farm.
 2. Add the content databases to the Web applications.
Use the following Windows PowerShell cmdlet to add and upgrade the content databases:

```
Mount-SPContentDatabase -Name <DatabaseName> -DatabaseServer <ServerName> -  
WebApplication <URL> [-Updateuserexperience]
```
 3. Verify upgrade for the first database.
 4. Repeat the restore-and-add-database procedures for remaining databases in parallel.
- For detailed procedures that describe these steps, see [Perform a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

Process for upgrading in-place with detached databases (temporary small farm)

Back up the databases from the temporary small farm and attach them to the original farm

1. Back up the upgraded databases by using SQL Server tools.
2. Restore the backup copy to the original farm.
3. Add the upgraded content databases to the original Web applications.

This is basically the same process as the previous step; however, you are moving the databases from the temporary small farm back to the original farm. The same procedures apply as in the previous steps.

Verification

If upgrade fails or reports issues, you can refer to the log and error files for more information. For more information about reviewing the log files, and about restarting upgrade after a failure, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Additional steps

After you have completed the upgrade, there are several steps that you should take to complete the configuration for your new farm. For more information, see [Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Install available language template packs (SharePoint Server 2010)

Before you can upgrade any sites that are based on a language pack for the previous version, you have to install the language pack for the new version.

In this article:

- [About installing language packs and upgrading sites](#)
- [About changing languages](#)
- [Moving from a fully localized product to a language pack](#)
- [Changing languages to a new language pack](#)

About installing language packs and upgrading sites

If you want to install a language pack for Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, do so after running Setup and before running the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard. This way, you can upgrade any sites based on a language pack for a previous version along with the other sites during the upgrade process. For more information about installing language packs, see [Deploy language packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a(Office.14).aspx)) in the Deployment Guide.

You can also install a language pack after you have run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, and after you have upgraded the sites in your environment that are not based on a language pack. If you choose this option, you must then use the PSConfig command-line tool to upgrade the sites based on the newly installed language pack.

About changing languages

Generally, a cross-language upgrade is not supported. You must upgrade from and to the same language. For example, if you are running U.S. English in the previous version, you need to upgrade to U.S. English in the new version. If you want to change languages, you must first perform the upgrade and then change the language for the site.

However, this process is complicated in some cases — for example, when the previous version had a fully localized product for a particular language but the new version only has a language pack, or when the new version has a language pack for a new language that was not available in the previous version.

Moving from a fully localized product to a language pack

Use the following procedure on each Web server to upgrade from a language that was supported with a fully localized product in the previous version, but that is only supported by a language pack in the new version:

► To move from a fully localized product to a language pack

1. Verify that the user account that is performing this procedure is a member of the Farm Administrators SharePoint group.
2. Choose a language to install for the new version (for example, English). This is the language that the SharePoint Central Administration Web site will use.
3. In the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, when you are prompted to install language packs, stop the wizard and install the appropriate language pack.

If you had additional previous-version language packs installed, install the corresponding SharePoint Server 2010 language packs now by canceling the wizard, and then running the appropriate Setup programs to install the language packs.

Note:

You must be a member of the Administrators group on the local computer to perform this step.

For more information about installing language packs, see [Deploy language packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a(Office.14).aspx)) in the Deployment Guide.

4. Start the configuration wizard again to complete the upgrade process.

Changing languages to a new language pack

Use the following process to upgrade from a language in the previous version to a different language in the new version (for example, if the language you want was not available in the previous version, but is now available as a language pack in the new version).

► To change languages to a new language pack

1. Verify that the user account performing the next two steps is a member of the Administrators group on the local computer.
2. Upgrade to the new version in the same language that you used for the previous version.
3. After the upgrade is complete, install the new language pack.
4. Verify that the user account performing the next two steps is a member of the Farm Administrators SharePoint group.

-
5. Create new sites based on the new language pack.
 6. Manually move your content to the new sites.

See Also

[Deploy language packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a(Office.14).aspx))

Perform a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010

Now that you have learned about the upgrade process by reading the articles in [About the upgrade process \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), and planned for your upgrade by following the steps in the articles in [Plan and prepare for upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#), you are ready to perform a database attach upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010. You can follow the steps in this section for both a trial upgrade and your actual in-place upgrade on your production farm.

In this section:

- [Checklist for database attach upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Use this checklist to make sure that you follow all necessary steps as you prepare for upgrade, perform the upgrade, and perform post-upgrade steps.
- [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#)
Before you can attach and upgrade your databases, you must fully configure your new environment.
- [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
After your new environment is fully configured, follow these steps to attach the databases and upgrade your SharePoint sites.

Checklist for database attach upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

This article contains a checklist you can use to make sure that you followed all necessary steps as you prepare for upgrade, perform the upgrade, and perform post-upgrade steps.

In this article:

- [Prepare for upgrade](#)
- [Perform the upgrade](#)
- [Perform post-upgrade steps](#)


Some of the steps include notes about the amount of time the steps might take. These are rough estimates only, to give you a relative idea of the duration of the step. To find out how much time each step will take for your environment, we recommend that you perform trial upgrades in a test environment. For more information, see [Estimate how long the upgrade process will take and the space that you need \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) and [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Prepare for upgrade

Follow these steps in order before you begin a database attach upgrade:

| Pre-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade | Notes |
|--|---|
| Prepare for upgrade | |
| [] Run the pre-upgrade checker Run the pre-upgrade checker and address any issues. Use the report that is generated by the tool to fill out the Upgrade planning worksheet. Detailed steps: Run the pre-upgrade checker (SharePoint Server 2010) . | Perform this step multiple times as you clean up your environment and test your upgrade process. Running the checker takes only a few minutes, but addressing any issues might take days or weeks. |
| [] Create an inventory of server-side customizations in the environment Create an inventory of the server-side customizations in your environment (solutions, features, Web Parts, event handlers, master | Perform this step for the whole environment. Check each Web server to make sure that you |

| Pre-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade | Notes |
|--|---|
| <p>pages, page layouts, CSS files, and so on). Much of this information is reported when you run the pre-upgrade checker. Record all customizations needed for your environment in the upgrade worksheet.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Identify and install customizations in the "Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues" article.</p> | <p>don't miss any customizations. Keep the inventory up to date as you prepare for the upgrade.</p> |
| <p>[] Clean up your environment</p> <p>Before you begin upgrading, you should make sure that your environment is functioning in a healthy state and that you clean up any content that you do not have to upgrade. Clean up any orphaned sites or data, address any large lists and large ACLs, remove extraneous document versions, and remove any unused templates, features and Web Parts.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Cleaning up your environment before upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step once for the whole environment.</p> <p>This process might take days or weeks to complete.</p> |
| <p>Prepare the new environment</p> <p>Also see Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade.</p> | |
| <p>[] Install and configure SharePoint Server 2010 and any language packs</p> <p>Install the prerequisite software, and then install and configure SharePoint Server 2010.</p> | <p>Perform these steps on each server in your farm.</p> <p>This step might take one or more hours, depending on how many servers are in your environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Configure service applications</p> <p>Enable and configure the services you need in your new environment. Do not configure the User Profile service application yet. You will enable and configure the User Profile service application when you upgrade the Shared Services Provider (SSP) database.</p> | <p>Perform this step once for the whole environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Configure general farm settings</p> <p>Reapply any general farm settings that you must have from your previous farm — such as blocked file types and e-mail and quota settings — and add users or groups to the Farm Administrators group. Configure new settings such as usage and health data collection,</p> | <p>Perform this step once for the whole environment.</p> |

| Pre-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade | Notes |
|---|--|
| <p>diagnostic logging, and mobile accounts.</p> <p> Important:</p> <p>If you had disabled the Workflow Auto Cleanup timer job in your Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment, make sure that you disable this timer job in your new environment also. If this timer job is enabled in the new environment and disabled in the previous version environment, you might lose workflow associations when you upgrade. For more information about this timer job, see Disable preservation of workflow history (SharePoint Server 2010) (http://technet.microsoft.com/library/1cbc2ed6-4e14-4cd5-83a4-076437e984c4(Office.14).aspx).</p> | |
| <p>[] Create and configure Web applications</p> <p>Create a Web application for each Web application that existed in the old environment.</p> | <p>Perform this step once for the whole environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Reapply server-side customizations</p> <p>Manually transfer all server-side customizations into your new farm. Refer to the inventory you created in the upgrade worksheet to make sure that you install any components that your sites depend on to work correctly.</p> | <p>Make sure that you reapply customizations to all Web servers in the farm.</p> |
| <p>[] Verify the new environment</p> <p>After you set up the new environment, you can perform tests to make sure it contains all the components you have to have before you upgrade your data.</p> | <p>Perform this step once for the whole environment.</p> |

Perform the upgrade

Follow these steps in order during a database attach upgrade. Steps required for database attach with read-only databases are also included.

Detailed steps: [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

| Perform the database attach upgrade | Notes |
|--|--|
| <p>[] Run the pre-upgrade checker</p> <p>Run the pre-upgrade checker again to identify any new or remaining issues before you set the databases to read-only or back up the databases.</p> | <p>Running the checker takes only a few minutes, but addressing any issues</p> |

| Perform the database attach upgrade | Notes |
|---|---|
| Detailed steps: Run the pre-upgrade checker (SharePoint Server 2010) . | might take longer. |
| <p>[] Set the previous version databases to be read-only (database attach with read-only databases)</p> <p>If you want your original environment to remain available to users in a read-only state, set the databases to read-only before you back them up.</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database in your environment.</p> <p>Depending on your organization, you might need a database administrator to perform this task.</p> |
| <p>[] Back up databases</p> <p>Back up all of your content and SSP databases before you begin the database attach upgrade process.</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database and SSP database in your environment.</p> <p>This step can take an hour, several hours, or longer, depending on your data set and your environment.</p> <p>Depending on your organization, you might need a database administrator to perform this task.</p> |
| <p>[] Detach the previous version databases (standard database attach)</p> <p>If you are going to upgrade the original databases (rather than a backup copy), detach the original databases from the instance of Microsoft SQL Server so that you can move them to the new environment.</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database and SSP database in your environment.</p> <p>Depending on your organization, you might need a database administrator to perform this task.</p> |

| Perform the database attach upgrade | Notes |
|---|---|
| <p>[] Restore a backup copy of the database (database attach with read-only databases)</p> <p>If you are going to upgrade a copy of the databases, restore the databases from the backup.</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database and SSP database in your environment.</p> <p>This step can take an hour or longer, depending on your data set and your environment.</p> <p>Depending on your organization, you might need a database administrator to perform this task.</p> |
| <p>[] Verify custom components</p> <p>Use the Test-SPContentDatabase Windows PowerShell cmdlet to verify that you have all the custom components that you need for that database.</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database in your environment.</p> <p>Running the cmdlet takes only a few minutes, but addressing any issues might take longer.</p> |
| <p>[] Verify permissions</p> <p>Ensure that the account that you use to attach the databases is a member of the db_owner fixed database role for the content databases that you want to upgrade.</p> | |
| <p>[] Attach a content database to a Web application</p> <p>Attach the first content database that you want to upgrade. You must perform this action from the command line. You can use the Mount-SPContentDatabase Windows PowerShell cmdlet or the AddContentDB Stsadm operation.</p> | <p>Perform this step for one content database in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or longer, depending on your</p> |

| Perform the database attach upgrade | Notes |
|--|---|
| | data set and hardware on the Web servers, database servers, and storage subsystem. |
| <p>[] Verify upgrade for the first database</p> <p>Verify that upgrade succeeded for the first database, and review the site to see if there are any issues.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | Perform this step for the content database you just attached. |
| <p>[] Upgrade the SSP database and configure user profiles</p> <p>Before you upgrade any My Site Web sites, you need to upgrade the SSP database and configure the User Profile service application.</p> | <p>Perform this step for each SSP that you had in your original environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour or more to complete, depending on your data set and hardware on the Web servers, database servers, and storage subsystem.</p> |
| <p>[] Upgrade My Site Web sites</p> <p>Configure the My Site host URL and upgrade the My Site Web sites.</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database that contains My Site Web sites in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or longer, depending on your data set, whether you are upgrading multiple databases in parallel, and the hardware on the Web servers, database servers, and</p> |

| Perform the database attach upgrade | Notes |
|--|--|
| | storage subsystem. |
| <p>[] Attach remaining databases</p> <p>Attach and upgrade the remaining content databases in your environment. You must perform this action from the command line.</p> | <p>Perform this step for each of the remaining content databases in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or longer, depending on your data set, whether you are upgrading multiple databases in parallel, and the hardware on the Web servers, database servers, and storage subsystem.</p> |
| <p>[] Monitor upgrade progress</p> <p>Use the Upgrade Status page in SharePoint Central Administration to monitor progress as your sites are upgraded.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step for each content database that you upgrade.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or days, depending on your data set.</p> |
| <p>[] Verify upgrade for the remaining database</p> <p>Verify that upgrade succeeded for the remaining databases, and review the sites to see if there are any issues.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step for each of the remaining content databases in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or days, depending on your content.</p> |

Perform post-upgrade steps

Follow these steps in order after you perform a database attach upgrade.

| Post upgrade steps for database attach upgrade | Notes |
|--|--|
| <p>[] Reapply administrator permissions for services</p> <p>By default, farm administrators have permissions to all services when you perform a database attach upgrade. If you want to apply more restrictive permissions, do so now.</p> | <p>Perform this step for any services that require restricted permissions.</p> |
| <p>[] Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for User Profile services</p> <p>Data in profile properties in Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 that had multiple values was stored in the SSP database as part of the Profile Services data. For SharePoint Server 2010, this data must be converted to taxonomy data and be stored in the managed metadata database. When you upgrade, any photos that were stored as profile pictures must be updated. If you do not update the photo store data, either no photos will be displayed or some photos might appear distorted. You perform these actions from the command line by using Windows PowerShell cmdlets.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for Profile Services</p> | <p>Perform this step once for each User Profile service application in your environment.</p> <p>This step contains a lot of smaller steps. Depending on the complexity of your user profile data and your configuration, this might take an hour or several hours to complete.</p> |
| <p>[] Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service</p> <p>The SSO service that was available in Office SharePoint Server 2007 has been replaced with the Secure Store service in SharePoint Server 2010. There is no direct upgrade path for the data and settings from SSO to the Secure Store service, but you can migrate data from the SSO database to a new Secure Store database. Excel Services Application needs the Secure Store service account to function correctly.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service</p> | <p>Perform this step for each Secure Store service application that needs data from a previous SSO service.</p> |
| <p>[] Upgrade solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog</p> <p>If you used the database attach method to upgrade and you want to continue to use the external data that is accessed</p> | <p>Perform this step once for your entire environment.</p> |

| Post upgrade steps for database attach upgrade | Notes |
|--|---|
| <p>through one or more application definitions, you perform several additional tasks.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Upgrading solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog</p> | |
| <p>[] Update links that are used in any upgraded InfoPath form templates</p> <p>For a database attach upgrade, you exported and imported any InfoPath form templates in your environment when you created the new environment. After upgrade, you can now update the links that are used in those upgraded form templates to point to the correct URLs by using a Windows PowerShell cmdlet.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Update links that are used in any upgraded InfoPath form templates</p> | <p>Perform this step once for your entire environment.</p> |
| <p>[] Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites</p> <p>Review sites to be sure that they have been upgraded successfully and are ready for users to view.</p> <p>Detailed steps: Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites (SharePoint Server 2010).</p> | <p>Perform this step for every upgraded database and site collection in your environment.</p> <p>This step might take an hour, several hours, or days, depending on your content.</p> <p>You should also have site owners review their sites and report any issues.</p> |
| <p>[] Start a full crawl</p> <p>After all content is upgraded and all settings are configured, you can start a full search crawl of your content. This might take several hours or several days to complete, depending on how much content exists in your environment.</p> | <p>Perform this step once for your entire environment.</p> <p>Performing a full crawl can take several hours or days to complete, depending on the amount of content in your environment.</p> |

See Also

[Upgrade Worksheet for SharePoint 2010 Products](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=179928>)

Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade

When you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 by using the database attach approach, you upgrade only the content for your environment and not the configuration settings. Using a database attach upgrade is useful when you are changing hardware or want to reconfigure your server farm topology as part of the upgrade process. For more information about how to choose an upgrade approach, see [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Before you can upgrade the data, you must configure a new server or server farm by using SharePoint Server 2010. This article explains the elements you need to configure to create that new environment. For more information about the general process of upgrading by using the database attach upgrade approach, see [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Important:

To perform the steps in this article, you must have administrator rights on the local server computer. For more information, see [Administrative and service accounts required for initial deployment \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx)).

In this article:

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Create and configure the new environment](#)
- [Verify the new environment](#)
- [Perform the upgrade](#)

Before you begin

Before you begin to create the new environment for a database attach upgrade, review the following information about permissions, hardware requirements, and software requirements.

- Ensure that you have met all hardware and software requirements. You must have a 64-bit version of Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2. For server farms, you must also have a 64-bit version of SQL Server 2005 or SQL Server 2008. For more information about these requirements (such as specific updates that you must install), see [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)).
- Ensure that you are prepared to set up the required accounts by using appropriate permissions. For detailed information, see [Administrative and service accounts required for initial deployment](#)

[\(\[SharePoint Server 2010\]\(http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8\(Office.14\).aspx\)\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx)).

- Run the pre-upgrade checker on your original environment. The pre-upgrade checker identifies potential upgrade issues in your environment so that you can address them before you upgrade. It can also help you identify settings that you need in your new environment. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Create and configure the new environment

The process of creating and configuring the new environment contains several steps, which must be performed in the correct sequence. These steps are:

1. Install SharePoint Server 2010 on the server or servers.
2. Configure service applications.
3. Configure general farm settings.
4. Create and configure Web applications.
5. Reapply customizations.

The remainder of this section describes these steps and provides links to other articles that contain step-by-step instructions for performing them. After you have performed these steps, you can verify the environment and then perform the upgrade.

Install

The first step in creating your new environment is to install SharePoint Server 2010 and configure your new server or server farm. You must do the following:

1. Run the Microsoft SharePoint Products Preparation Tool to install all required software.
2. Run Setup to install the product.
3. Install any language packs that you need in your environment.
4. Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard to configure your server or servers.

The following articles provide step-by-step instructions for performing these tasks.

- **Install and configure the product**

Follow the steps in one of the following articles to install and configure SharePoint Server 2010 on a single server or server farm:

- [Deploy a single server with SQL Server \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/356d3a0b-fc26-455c-9afb-6d2ffdceef84\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/356d3a0b-fc26-455c-9afb-6d2ffdceef84(Office.14).aspx))
- [Multiple servers for a three-tier farm \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4982a861-ad5c-43e4-a49f-958afd4370aa\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4982a861-ad5c-43e4-a49f-958afd4370aa(Office.14).aspx))

For more deployment scenarios (such as installing in a stand-alone environment with SQL Express), see [Deployment scenarios \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/47db8aed-7e2b-4ccb-b248-d71df3bffa99(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/47db8aed-7e2b-4ccb-b248-d71df3bffa99\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/47db8aed-7e2b-4ccb-b248-d71df3bffa99(Office.14).aspx)).

- **Install and configure language packs**

Follow the steps in [Deploy language packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/26c07867-0150-463d-b21a-a6d42aecf05a(Office.14).aspx)) to install and configure any language packs that are needed for the sites in your environment.

Configure service applications

You must create the services settings on your new farm before you upgrade the data in a database attach upgrade. The steps included in the deployment scenarios articles listed above describe how to use the Initial Farm Configuration Wizard to enable all services. After running the wizard, you must transfer any custom settings from your original environment to your new environment and configure any additional services and settings you need.

Use the Initial Farm Configuration Wizard to enable the following service applications:

- **Business Data Connectivity service**

Data from the Business Data Catalog service is not upgraded to the Business Data Connectivity service when you perform a database attach upgrade. If you want to continue to use the external data that is accessed through one or more application definitions, you must complete the following tasks:

- In your original environment, export any application definitions (models) that are required by your solution from the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog. For more information, see [Export application definition](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc816952(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc816952\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc816952(Office.12).aspx)).
- Update the solution to use the object model and features of the Microsoft Business Connectivity Services. This includes updating the application definition file to be compatible with Microsoft Business Connectivity Services. For information about the Business Data Connectivity service object model, see [Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Software Development Kit](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166117) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166117>).
- In your new environment, configure the Business Data Connectivity service application.
- After upgrade, import the updated model into the Business Data Connectivity service. For more information, see [Manage BDC models \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7b6fced6-c8a9-4d79-a11a-8cf3445c52bf(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7b6fced6-c8a9-4d79-a11a-8cf3445c52bf\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7b6fced6-c8a9-4d79-a11a-8cf3445c52bf(Office.14).aspx)).

- **Excel Services Application**

You must reconfigure this service application when you perform a database attach upgrade. Make sure that you re-create any trusted data connections. For more information, see [Excel Services administration \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/a96cfa2d-87f8-4991-801c-fd5482d49d0b(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/a96cfa2d-87f8-4991-801c-fd5482d49d0b\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/a96cfa2d-87f8-4991-801c-fd5482d49d0b(Office.14).aspx)).

- **Managed Metadata service**

This is a new service in SharePoint Server 2010. Before you can upgrade user profile data in a database attach upgrade, you must enable and configure this service application.

For more information, see [Create, update, publish, or delete a managed metadata service application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/be30ab95-f6bf-41e1-93ac-2f5c78ac703b(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/be30ab95-f6bf-41e1-93ac-2f5c78ac703b\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/be30ab95-f6bf-41e1-93ac-2f5c78ac703b(Office.14).aspx)).

- **Search service application**

Search settings are not preserved during a database attach upgrade. You must manually reconfigure Search before you upgrade. For more information about how to configure Search, see [Post-installation steps for search \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/c2fab560-bdc2-4093-a6a5-979dcda5bc4d(Office.14).aspx)

([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/c2fab560-bdc2-4093-a6a5-979dcda5bc4d\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/c2fab560-bdc2-4093-a6a5-979dcda5bc4d(Office.14).aspx)).

- **Secure Store service**

You need to enable and configure this service application so that you can upgrade Excel Services Application and Business Data Catalog data. For more information, see [Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service](#) in the article Perform post-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010).



Important:

Do not enable and configure the User Profile service application by using the Initial Farm Configuration Wizard. Although you must have configured this service application and the User Profile Synchronization service before you upgrade the SSP database, specific steps are required to configure these services. The steps required to configure these services and upgrade the SSP database are included in the [Upgrade the shared services database](#) section of the article "Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010."

You must also enable and configure the following service:

- **InfoPath Forms Service**

Configure InfoPath Forms Services by using the **Configure InfoPath Forms Services** link on the **General Application Settings** page in SharePoint Central Administration. Export any administrator-deployed form templates (.xsn files) and data connection files (.udcx files) from your Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment, and then import them to your new SharePoint Server 2010 environment. For more information, see [Configure InfoPath Forms Services \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/3728d1fa-c1db-4445-8d00-e26f9015dd95(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/3728d1fa-c1db-4445-8d00-e26f9015dd95\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/3728d1fa-c1db-4445-8d00-e26f9015dd95(Office.14).aspx)) and [Plan to upgrade form templates during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

Configure general farm settings

The next step in creating the new environment is to apply general farm settings. You must manually reapply configuration settings from your previous version farm, including the following:

- Incoming and outgoing e-mail settings

-
- Any farm-level security and permission settings, such as adding user or group accounts to the Farm Administrators group.
 - Blocked file types
 - Quota templates

And you must configure any new farm-level settings that you want to use, such as the following:

- Usage and health data collection
- Diagnostic logging
- Mobile accounts

For more information about how to configure these settings, see [Configure farm settings \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/069bcdb5-f9bb-4346-8304-5be2f768e3dc(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/069bcdb5-f9bb-4346-8304-5be2f768e3dc\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/069bcdb5-f9bb-4346-8304-5be2f768e3dc(Office.14).aspx)).

 **Important:**

If you had disabled the Workflow Auto Cleanup timer job in your Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment, make sure that you disable this timer job in your new environment also. If this timer job is enabled in the new environment and disabled in the previous version environment, you might lose workflow associations when you upgrade. For more information about this timer job, see [Disable preservation of workflow history \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/1cbc2ed6-4e14-4cd5-83a4-076437e984c4(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/1cbc2ed6-4e14-4cd5-83a4-076437e984c4\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/1cbc2ed6-4e14-4cd5-83a4-076437e984c4(Office.14).aspx)).

Create and configure Web applications

Create a Web application for each Web application that existed in the original environment. For each Web application, do the following:

- Use the same URL and configure any alternate-access mapping settings.

 **Note:**

If you use a different URL, Microsoft Office applications might not be redirected correctly to the new URLs and any bookmarks to the old URLs will not work.

- Use the same authentication method.

 **Important**

- If you were using forms-based authentication, you will need to configure claims-based authentication instead. You must also create a Web application policy to grant Full Control to the user account that will be performing the database attach upgrade.
- For more information, see [Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- Re-create included paths (such as /Sites).
- Enable self-service site creation for any Web application that used it in the previous environment.

For more information about how to configure Web applications and authentication, see the following articles:

- For classic authentication: [Create a Web application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/121c8d83-a508-4437-978b-303096aa59df(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/121c8d83-a508-4437-978b-303096aa59df\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/121c8d83-a508-4437-978b-303096aa59df(Office.14).aspx))
- For claims-based authentication: [Create a Web application that uses Windows-claims authentication \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/83496762-172a-44a4-bf57-1d7ea8008d7d(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/83496762-172a-44a4-bf57-1d7ea8008d7d\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/83496762-172a-44a4-bf57-1d7ea8008d7d(Office.14).aspx)) and [Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/83496762-172a-44a4-bf57-1d7ea8008d7d(Office.14).aspx)

Reapply customizations

One frequent cause of failures during upgrade is that the environment is missing customized features, solutions, or other elements. Make sure that any custom elements you have to have are installed on your front-end Web servers before you begin the upgrade process. You can use the pre-upgrade checker to compile a list of server-side customizations in your environment. For more information, see [Identify and install customizations](#) in the article "Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues."

In this step, you manually transfer all customizations into your new farm. Make sure to install any components that your sites depend on to work correctly, including the following:

- Custom site definitions



Note:

If the site definition was created in Office SharePoint Server 2007, you can copy it over to the new environment as-is. If, however, it was created in Microsoft Office SharePoint Portal Server 2003, you might have to create an upgrade definition file to map the site definition to the new features in Office SharePoint Server 2007. For more information, see [Develop new custom site definitions and create upgrade definition files \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263404(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263404\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263404(Office.12).aspx)) and [Deploy upgrade definition files and new site definitions \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263228(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263228\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263228(Office.12).aspx)).

- Custom style sheets, including cascading style sheets, and images
- Custom Web Parts
- Custom Web services
- Custom features and solutions
- Custom assemblies
- Web.config changes (such as security)

Ensure that you transfer any unique settings from the Web.config files for each Web application to the new servers.

- Administrator-approved form templates (.xsn files) and data connection files (.udcx files) for InfoPath

You must export form templates and data connection files from the original environment and then import them to the new environment. For more information, see [Plan to upgrade form templates during an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#) and [Perform post-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

- Any other components or files on which your sites depend.

For more information about how to update customizations for use in SharePoint Server 2010, see: [Redeploying Customizations and Solutions in SharePoint Foundation 2010 and SharePoint Server 2010](#) ([http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ee662217\(office.14\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ee662217(office.14).aspx)). For more information about how to deploy customizations to your environment, see [Deploy customizations - overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/be4ca20f-520e-4fd7-9c42-140af800cbc8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/be4ca20f-520e-4fd7-9c42-140af800cbc8(Office.14).aspx)).

Verify the new environment

After you have set up the new environment, you can perform tests to make sure it contains all the components you need before you upgrade your data. To test your new environment, you can use the following methods:

- Create a new Web application and then use the Windows PowerShell **Test-SPContentDatabase** cmdlet to verify that all the server-side customizations that are needed for that content database are present in the new environment. Do not attach or upgrade the database. For more information, see [Test-SPContentDatabase](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ed095a0a-fa1a-4323-8503-624f0e09707d\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ed095a0a-fa1a-4323-8503-624f0e09707d(Office.14).aspx)).



Note:

You can also run this command on the original content database, but the database should not be in active use at the time.

- Use the **enumallwebs** Stsadm operation in your Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment to see which template each site is associated with and then verify whether the template is installed in your SharePoint Server 2010 environment. The October Cumulative Update includes improvements to the **enumallwebs** operation that can help you find customizations in use. For more information about this operation, see [Enumallwebs: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789634\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd789634(Office.12).aspx)).

Perform the upgrade

After you finish preparing the new environment, you can attach and upgrade the databases.

Follow the steps in [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#) to attach and upgrade the databases from the Office SharePoint Server 2007 server or server farm to the new SharePoint Server 2010 server or server farm.

Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010

When you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 by using the database attach upgrade approach, you upgrade only the content for your environment and not the configuration settings. Using a database attach upgrade approach is useful when you are changing hardware or want to reconfigure your server farm topology as part of the upgrade process. For more information about how to choose an upgrade approach, see [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

The first step in the process is to set up a new environment to host the upgraded content. If you have not yet set up and configured the new environment, follow the steps in [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#) to do so.

After you set up the new environment, you can use the procedures in this article to detach and then reconnect the databases to perform the actual upgrade. This article contains the steps required to perform a standard database attach upgrade and a database attach upgrade with read-only databases.

In this article:

- [Process overview](#)
- [Before you begin](#)
- [Set the previous version databases to be read-only \(database attach with read-only databases\)](#)
- [Back up the previous version databases by using SQL Server tools](#)
- [Detach the previous version databases \(standard database attach\)](#)
- [Restore a backup copy of the database \(database attach with read-only databases\)](#)
- [Verify custom components](#)
- [Attach a content database to a Web application](#)
- [Verification: Verify upgrade for the first database](#)
- [Upgrade the shared services database](#)
- [Upgrade My Site Web sites](#)
- [Attach the remaining databases](#)
- [Verification: Verify upgrade for additional databases](#)

**Note:**

One frequent cause of failures during upgrade is that the environment is missing customized features, solutions, or other elements. Be sure that any custom elements you have to have are installed on your front-end Web servers before you begin the upgrade process. Use the pre-upgrade checker — and, for a database attach upgrade, also use the **test-spcontentdatabase** Windows PowerShell cmdlet — to identify any custom elements that your sites might be using. For more information, see [Identify and install customizations](#) in the article "Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues."

For more information about the general process of upgrading by using the database attach upgrade approach, see [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Process overview

When you upgrade by using database attach upgrade, you detach the databases in the old farm and then attach them to the new farm. When you attach a database to the new farm, the upgrade process runs and upgrades the whole database. The database attach upgrade process is similar to the in-place upgrade process. The difference is that the database attach upgrade process is performed manually, and is performed in a separate environment.

If you want to preserve your original farm and allow users to continue to access their data, you must set the databases to read-only and then attach a backup copy of the databases.

You can attach and upgrade databases from either Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 or Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 to a new Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 environment. For both sources, the steps to set up and attach databases to the new environment are the same.

**Note:**

The part of the process in this article that is specific to moving a database from one computer that is running Microsoft SQL Server to a different computer that is running SQL Server is known as *planned relocation*. For more information about planned relocation, see [Moving User Databases](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=148425>).

For a general overview of the upgrade process, see [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Before you begin

Before you begin the database attach upgrade, review the following information about permissions, hardware requirements, and software requirements. Follow the specified steps to install or configure prerequisite software or to modify settings.

- Ensure that you have met all hardware and software requirements. You must have a 64-bit version of Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2. For server farms, you must also have a 64-bit version of SQL Server 2005 or SQL Server 2008.

For more information about these requirements (such as specific updates that you must install), see [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)).

- Ensure that you are prepared to set up the required accounts by using appropriate permissions. For detailed information, see [Administrative and service accounts required for initial deployment \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx)).
- Ensure that the account you use to attach the databases is a member of the **db_owner** fixed database role for the content databases that you want to upgrade.
- Run the pre-upgrade checker tool on the sites that are stored in the databases. The pre-upgrade checker identifies potential upgrade issues in your environment so that you can address them before you upgrade. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- Create a new server farm environment. For information about how to create the new environment, see [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#).
- Check for and repair any database consistency errors. For more information, see [Database maintenance for Office SharePoint Server 2007 \(white paper\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262731\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262731(Office.12).aspx)).

Set the previous version databases to be read-only (database attach with read-only databases)

If you are using the read-only databases hybrid approach to upgrade, set the previous version databases to read-only before you back up the databases. In any type of database attach upgrade, you can also set the databases to read-only temporarily to ensure that you capture all the data in the backup so that you are restoring and upgrading the current state of the environment. If the databases are set to read-only, users can continue to view content, but they will be unable to add or change content.



Important:

You cannot upgrade a database that is set to read-only. If you are using a database attach with read-only databases, you restore a copy of the database and perform the upgrade on the copy. If you are not using this method, but want to set content databases to read-only temporarily while you back up the current data, make sure that you set the databases to read-write before you attach and upgrade the databases.



Important:

Be sure you have run the pre-upgrade checker before you perform this procedure. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

▶ **To set a database to read-only in SQL Server 2000**

1. In SQL Server Enterprise Manager, right-click the name of the database that you want to set to read-only, and then click **Properties**.
2. In the **Properties** dialog box, click the **Options** tab.
3. Under **Access**, select the **Read-only** check box, and then click **OK**.

▶ **To set a database to read-only in SQL Server 2005**

1. In SQL Server Management Studio, right-click the name of the database that you want to set to read-only, and then click **Properties**.
2. In the **Select a page** section, click **Options**.
3. In the right pane, under **Other options**, in the **State** section, next to **Database Read-Only**, click the arrow, and then select **True**.

▶ **To set a database to read-only in SQL Server 2008**

1. In SQL Server Management Studio, in Object Explorer, connect to an instance of the Database Engine, expand the server, and then expand **Databases**.
2. Select the database that you want to configure to be read-only, right-click the database, and then click **Properties**.
3. In the **Database Properties** dialog box, in the **Select a page** section, click **Options**.
4. In the right pane, under **Other options**, in the **State** section, next to **Database Read-Only**, click the arrow, and then select **True**.

You can configure the **READ_ONLY** database availability option by using Transact-SQL. For more information about how to use the **SET** clause of the **ALTER DATABASE** statement, see [Setting Database Options](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=148362) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=148362>).

Back up the previous version databases by using SQL Server tools

Follow the appropriate procedure to back up databases in SQL Server 2000, SQL Server 2005, or SQL Server 2008. Repeat the procedure for each of the following databases in the original server farm:

- Content
- Shared services

For more information about upgrade and shared services, see [How other services are affected by upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

You do not have to back up the configuration or admin content databases, because you will re-create these databases in the new server farm. For more information about the kinds of databases that you might have in a Office SharePoint Server 2007 server farm, see [Database types and descriptions \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc678868(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc678868\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc678868(Office.12).aspx)).

At the end of this procedure, you will have created duplicates of the read-only content databases.

▶ **To back up a database in SQL Server 2000**

1. On the database server, click **Start**, point to **All Programs**, point to **Microsoft SQL Server**, and then click **Enterprise Manager**.
2. In SQL Server Enterprise Manager, expand **Microsoft SQL Servers**.
3. Expand **SQL Server Group**.
4. Expand **(local) (Windows NT)**.
5. Expand **Databases**.
6. Right-click the database that you want to back up, point to **All Tasks**, and then click **Backup Database**.
7. In the **SQL Server Backup** dialog box, in the **Name** box, specify a name for the backup, and then in the **Backup** area, select **Database - complete**.
8. In the **Destination** area, either select an existing destination or do the following:
 - a. Click **Add**.
 - b. In the **Select Backup Destination** box, select **File Name**, and then next to the **File Name** box, click **Browse**.
 - c. In the **Backup Device Location - (local)** dialog box, in the **File name** box, type a file name, and then click **OK**.
 - d. Click **OK** again to close the **Select Backup Destination** dialog box.
9. Click **OK** to start the backup process.
10. Click **OK** to acknowledge that the backup process is complete.

Repeat the previous procedure to back up all the content and shared services databases that are used by Office SharePoint Server 2007 in your environment.

▶ **To back up a database in SQL Server 2005**

1. On the database server, click **Start**, point to **All Programs**, point to **Microsoft SQL Server 2005**, and then click **SQL Server Management Studio**.
2. In the **Connect to Server** box, fill in the connection information, and then click **Connect**.
3. After you connect to the appropriate instance of the SQL Server 2005 Database Engine, in Object Explorer, expand the server tree by expanding the server name.
4. Expand **Databases**, right-click the database that you want to back up, point to **Tasks**, and then click **Back Up**. The **Back Up Database** dialog box appears.

-
5. In the **Source** area, in the **Database** box, verify the database name.
 6. In the **Backup type** box, select **Full**.
 7. Under **Backup component**, select **Database**.
 8. In the **Backup set** area, in the **Name** text box, either accept the default backup set name that is suggested or type a different name for the backup set.
 9. In the **Destination** area, specify the type of backup destination by selecting **Disk** or **Tape**, and then specify a destination. To create a different destination, click **Add**.
 10. Click **OK** to start the backup process.

Repeat the previous procedure to back up all the content and shared services databases that are used by Office SharePoint Server 2007 in your environment.

To back up a database in SQL Server 2008

1. On the database server, click **Start**, point to **All Programs**, point to **Microsoft SQL Server 2008**, and then click **SQL Server Management Studio**.
2. In the **Connect to Server** box, fill in the connection information, and then click **Connect**.
3. After you connect to the appropriate instance of the SQL Server 2008 Database Engine, in Object Explorer, expand the server name.
4. Expand **Databases**, right-click the database that you want to back up, point to **Tasks**, and then click **Back Up**. The **Back Up Database** dialog box appears.
5. In the **Source** area, in the **Database** box, verify the database name.
6. In the **Backup type** box, select **Full**.
7. Under **Backup component**, select **Database**.
8. In the **Backup set** area, in the **Name** text box, either accept the default backup set name or type a new name.
9. In the **Destination** area, specify the type of backup destination by selecting **Disk** or **Tape**, and then specify a destination. To create a different destination, click **Add**.
10. Click **OK** to start the backup process.

Repeat the previous procedure to back up all the content and shared services databases that are used by Office SharePoint Server 2007 in your environment.

Detach the previous version databases (standard database attach)

Before you can attach your databases to the new environment and upgrade the data, you need to detach them from the current environment. After you have detached the databases, you can move them

to a new database server or leave them on the existing database server and attach them to the Web applications.

 **Important:**

Do not use the following procedure if you are performing a database attach upgrade with read-only databases. To continue to provide your users with access to their content, you need to leave the databases attached, and follow the steps in the [Restore a backup copy of the database \(database attach with read-only databases\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/38ef5fbb-181b-49bf-aa7a-2d5c47b3811c.aspx#restore) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/library/38ef5fbb-181b-49bf-aa7a-2d5c47b3811c.aspx#restore>) section later in this article to make a copy of the databases instead.

 **To detach a content database from a Web application**

1. In Central Administration, on the Application Management page, in the **SharePoint Web Application Management** section, click **Content databases**.
2. On the Manage Content Databases page, click the content database you want to detach.

 **Note:**

If the content database does not appear, it might be associated with another Web application. To select another Web application, on the **Web Application** menu, click **Change Web Application**.

3. On the Manage Content Database Settings page, in the **Remove Content Database** section, select the **Remove content database** check box, and then click **OK**.

 **Note:**

Removing the content database does not delete the database; it only removes the association of the database with the Web application.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each content database that you want to detach.

You can also use the **deletecontentdb** Stsadm operation to detach a content database from a Web application. For more information, see [Deletecontentdb: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262449(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262449\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262449(Office.12).aspx)).

If you are moving the databases to a different database server, you must also detach the databases from the instance of SQL Server before you move them and attach them to the new instance of SQL Server after you move them.

 **Important:**

If you move your databases to a different instance of SQL Server, make sure to verify that security is configured correctly. Check that the accounts you use have the appropriate fixed roles and permissions on the databases, and that they will still be valid accounts if you are moving across domains.

▶ **To detach a database from an instance of SQL Server and move it to another instance of SQL Server**

1. In SQL Server 2005 Management Studio, open the source instance of SQL Server, and then expand the **Databases** node.
2. Right-click the content database, point to **Tasks**, and then click **Detach**. Repeat this step for each content database that you want to detach and move.



Note:

Use this procedure to move only content databases. Do not detach any other databases.

3. In Windows Explorer, browse to the location of the .mdf and .ldf files for the content databases.
4. Select the .mdf and .ldf files for the database you want to move and either copy or move them to the destination directory.
5. In SQL Server 2005 Management Studio, open the source instance of SQL Server.
6. Right-click the **Databases** node, point to **Tasks**, and then click **Attach**.
7. In the **Attach Database** dialog box, browse to the location to which you transferred the .mdf and .ldf files, select the .mdf file for the database you want to attach, and then click **OK**.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 for each content database that you are moving.

Restore a backup copy of the database (database attach with read-only databases)

After you configure the new server farm, you can restore the backup copies of the databases on one of the following: Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 with Service Pack 1 (SP1) and Cumulative Update 2, and SQL Server 2005 with SP3 and Cumulative Update 3. Note that you must restore to a 64-bit version of SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 with SP1 and Cumulative Update 2, and SQL Server 2005 with SP3 and Cumulative Update 3. Start with one database, and then verify that the restoration has worked before you restore the other databases.

The following section provides procedures for restoring the backups.

▶ **To restore a backup copy of a database in SQL Server 2005 Enterprise Edition**

1. In SQL Server Management Studio, right-click **Databases**, and then click **Restore Database**. The **Restore Database** dialog box appears.
2. In the **Restore Database** dialog box, on the **General** page, in the **To database** box, type the name of the database you are restoring.
3. In the **To a point in time** text box, keep the default (**Most recent possible**).
4. To specify the source and location of the backup sets to restore, click **From device**, and then click **Browse** to select the backup file.

-
5. In the **Specify Backup** dialog box, in the **Backup media** box, make sure that **File** is selected.
 6. In the **Backup location** area, click **Add**.
 7. In the **Locate Backup File** dialog box, select the file that you want to restore, and then click **OK**.
 8. In the **Select the backup sets to restore** grid, select the **Restore** check box next to the most recent full backup.
 9. In the **Restore Database** dialog box, on the **Options** page, under **Restore options**, select the **Overwrite the existing database** check box.
 10. Click **OK** to start the restore process.

▶ **To restore a backup copy of a database in SQL Server 2008 Enterprise**

1. After you connect to the appropriate instance of the SQL Server 2008 Database Engine, in Object Explorer, expand the server name.
2. Right-click **Databases**, and then click **Restore Database**. The **Restore Database** dialog box appears.
3. In the **Restore Database** dialog box, on the **General** page, type the name of the database to be restored in the **To database** list.
4. In the **To a point in time** text box, retain the default (**Most recent possible**).
5. To specify the source and location of the backup sets to restore, click **From device**, and then click **Browse** to select the backup file.
6. In the **Specify Backup** dialog box, in the **Backup media** box, be sure that **File** is selected.
7. In the **Backup location** area, click **Add**.
8. In the **Locate Backup File** dialog box, select the file that you want to restore, click **OK**, and then, in the **Specify Backup** dialog box, click **OK**.
9. In the **Restore Database** dialog box, under **Select the backup sets to restore** grid, select the **Restore** check box next to the most recent full backup.
10. In the **Restore Database** dialog box, on the **Options** page, under **Restore options**, select the **Overwrite the existing database** check box.
11. Click **OK** to start the restore process.

Verify custom components

Before you attach the content databases to the Web applications, use the **Test-SPContentDatabase** Windows PowerShell cmdlet to verify that you have all the custom components that you need for that database.

► **To verify custom components are available by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Test-SPContentDatabase -Name <DatabaseName> -WebApplication <URL>
```

Where:

- *<DatabaseName>* is the name of the database you want to test.
- *<URL>* is the URL for the Web application that will host the sites.

For more information, see [Test-SPContentDatabase](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ed095a0a-fa1a-4323-8503-624f0e09707d(Office.14).aspx)

([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ed095a0a-fa1a-4323-8503-624f0e09707d\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ed095a0a-fa1a-4323-8503-624f0e09707d(Office.14).aspx)).

Attach a content database to a Web application

When you attach a content database, make sure that the root site for the Web application is included in the first content database that you attach. In other words, before you continue, examine the root of the Web application in the original server farm to determine the first site collection. After you attach the database that contains the root site, you can attach the other content databases for the Web application in any order. You do not have to create any site collections to store the content before you attach the database; this process creates the site collections for you. Make sure that you do not add any new site collections until you have restored all the content databases.

Important:

If you are moving the content databases across domains or forests or into another environment that has different service accounts, ensure that the permissions for the service accounts are still correct before you attach the databases.

You can use either the **Mount-SPContentDatabase** cmdlet in Windows PowerShell or the **addcontentdb** Stsadm command to attach a content database to a Web application. Using the SharePoint Central Administration pages to attach a content database is not supported for upgrading. Ensure that the account you use to attach the databases is a member of the **db_owner** fixed database role for the content databases that you want to upgrade.

Important

- If you were using forms-based authentication, you will need to configure claims-based authentication for your Web application before you attach any databases. You must also create a policy to grant Full Control to the Web application to the user account that will be performing the database attach upgrade.

-
- For more information, see [Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

**Tip**

- You cannot attach the same content database more than once to a farm, even on different Web applications. Each site collection in a content database has a GUID that is associated with it, which is registered in the configuration database. Therefore, you cannot add the same site collection twice to the farm, even in separate Web applications. Although you can successfully attach the database in this situation, you will be unable to start the site collection.
- If you need a duplicate copy of a site collection in the same farm, first attach the database that contains the site collection to a separate farm, and then use the Stsadm backup and restore operations to copy the site collection over to the other farm. The Stsadm backup and restore process creates a new GUID for the site collection.

▶ To attach a content database to a Web application by using Windows PowerShell

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin \(http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx\)](#).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Mount-SPContentDatabase -Name <DatabaseName> -DatabaseServer <ServerName> -  
WebApplication <URL> [-Updateuserexperience]
```

Where:

- *<DatabaseName>* is the name of the database you want to upgrade.
- *<ServerName>* is server on which the database is stored.
- *<URL>* is the URL for the Web application that will host the sites.
- *Updateuserexperience* is the choice to update to the new user experience or stay in the old user experience (part of Visual Upgrade). When you include this parameter, the site is set to preview the new user experience. Omit this parameter if you want the site to remain in the old user experience after upgrade. For more information, see [Plan visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

For more information, see [Mount-SPContentDatabase \(http://technet.microsoft.com/library/20d1bc07-805c-44d3-a278-e2793370e237\(Office.14\).aspx\)](#).

**Note:**

We recommend that you use Windows PowerShell when performing command-line administrative tasks. The Stsadm command-line tool has been deprecated, but is included to support compatibility with previous product versions.

▶ **To attach a content database to a Web application by using the Stsadm command-line tool**

1. On the drive on which SharePoint Products and Technologies is installed, change to the following directory: %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft shared\Web server extensions\12\Bin.
2. Type the following command, and then press ENTER:

```
stsadm -o addcontentdb -url<URL> -databasename<DatabaseName>  
[-databaseserver<ServerName>] [-databaseuser<UserName>]  
[-databasepassword<Password>] [-sitewarning<SiteWarningCount>]  
[-preserveolduserexperiencetrue/false]  
[-sitemax<SiteMaxCount>]  
[-assignnewdatabaseid][-clearchangelog]
```



Note

When you set the **preserveolduserexperience** parameter to *true*, the sites in the content database keep the look of the previous version after upgrade. When you set this parameter to *false*, the sites are upgraded to the new look and feel. The default for this parameter is *true*, which preserves the old look and feel.

This parameter is part of the Visual Upgrade feature. For more information, see [Plan visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

For more information, see [Addcontentdb: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263422\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc263422(Office.12).aspx)).

Verification: Verify upgrade for the first database

After you have attached a database, you can use the Upgrade Status page in Central Administration to check the status of upgrade on your site collections. After the upgrade process is complete, you can review the upgrade log file to see whether there were any issues during upgrade. Also, you can review each upgraded site to find and address any issues with how the content is displayed. For more information, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

▶ **To view the Upgrade Status page**

- In Central Administration, click **Upgrade and Migration**, and then click **Check upgrade status**.

▶ **To open the upgrade log file**

- The upgrade error log file and the upgrade log file are located at %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\web server extensions\14\LOGS. The logs are named in the following format: *Upgrade-YYYYMMDD-HHMMSS-SSS-error.log* and

Upgrade-YYYYMMDD-HHMMSS-SSS.log, where *YYYYMMDD* is the date and *HHMMSS-SSS* is the time (hours in 24-hour clock format, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds). An example for an upgrade error log is *Upgrade-20090415-132126-374-error.log*, and an example for an upgrade log is *Upgrade-20090415-132126-374.log*.



Note:

The upgrade log file includes the name of the content database being upgraded.

Upgrade the shared services database

Before you can upgrade any My Site Web sites in your environment, you must configure the User Profile service and Managed Metadata service and upgrade the Shared Services Provider (SSP) database. To do this, you must perform the following tasks:

1. Create an application pool for the User Profile service.
2. Verify that the Managed Metadata service is enabled.
3. Enable the User Profile service and upgrade the SSP database.



Note:

When you upgrade the SSP database, the audience information is also upgraded.

4. Create a new proxy for the User Profile service application and associate it with the default proxy group.

The following procedures provide the steps for these tasks.



Important:

The steps in the following sections assume that you have not yet enabled the User Profile service application or the User Profile Synchronization service. If you have already enabled these services, follow these steps to create a separate instance of the User Profile service application. You can associate your existing User Profile Synchronization service with the new User Profile service application.

▶ To create an application pool for the User Profile service by using Windows PowerShell

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. To create the application pool, at the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
New-SPServiceApplicationPool -Name <ApplicationPoolName>
```

```
-Account <DOMAIN\username>
```

Where:

- <ApplicationPoolName> is the name you want to use for the application pool.
- <DOMAIN\username> is a valid account. You can use a domain account, or you can use the name of a managed account in the farm. Use the **Get-SPManagedAccount** cmdlet to view the existing managed account in the farm.

For more information, see [New-SPServiceApplicationPool](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d653742-d173-4aeb-8c6c-78f32c711e59(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d653742-d173-4aeb-8c6c-78f32c711e59\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d653742-d173-4aeb-8c6c-78f32c711e59(Office.14).aspx)).

▶ **To verify that the Managed Metadata service is enabled**

1. In SharePoint Central Administration, on the **Application Management** page, click **Manage service applications**.
2. Verify that the Managed Metadata service is started.

For more information about how to enable and manage this service, see [Managed metadata administration \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/d62ebc00-9252-483e-94db-2b52b2cdb2c8(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/d62ebc00-9252-483e-94db-2b52b2cdb2c8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/d62ebc00-9252-483e-94db-2b52b2cdb2c8(Office.14).aspx)).

▶ **To enable the User Profile service and upgrade your SSP database by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. To enable the User Profile service and upgrade the SSP database, at the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
New-SPProfileServiceApplication -applicationpool <ApplicationPoolName> -Name  
<ServiceApplicationName> -Profiledbname <DatabaseName> [-Profiledbserver  
<ServerName>]
```

Where:

- <ApplicationPoolName> is the application pool name that you created in the previous step.
- <ServiceApplicationName> is the service application name you want to use.
- <DatabaseName> is the name of the database that contains the profile information.
- <ServerName> is the name of the server to which you are attaching the database.

For more information, see [New-SPProfileServiceApplication](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/acf51379-1811-4ffe-b5a0-a660d7a58f10(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/acf51379-1811-4ffe-b5a0-a660d7a58f10\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/acf51379-1811-4ffe-b5a0-a660d7a58f10(Office.14).aspx)).

▶ **To create the proxy for the User Profile service and associate it with the default proxy group by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. To configure the proxy for the User Profile service, at the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
New-SPProfileServiceApplicationProxy -ServiceApplication  
<ProfileServiceApplicationID> -Name <ProxyName> -DefaultProxyGroup
```

Where:

- *<ProfileServiceApplicationID>* is the GUID of the service application you created in the previous step.
- *<ProxyName>* is the proxy name you want to use.
- *DefaultProxyGroup* specifies that the User Profile service application proxy be added to the default proxy group for the local farm.

For more information, see [New-SPProfileServiceApplicationProxy](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/3019f2e5-451e-4af7-a434-3661319dd3c0(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/3019f2e5-451e-4af7-a434-3661319dd3c0\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/3019f2e5-451e-4af7-a434-3661319dd3c0(Office.14).aspx)).

Make sure that your farm administration account has Full Control of the User Profile service. Use the following procedure to grant the farm administration account full control.

▶ **Update permissions on the User Profile service**

1. In SharePoint Central Administration, on the Application Management page, click **Manage Service Applications**.
2. Click the User Profile Service Application row (not the link) and then, on the ribbon, click **Administrators**.
3. In the **Administrators for User Profile Service Application** dialog box, in the **To add an account, or group, type or select it below and click 'Add'** box, type the farm administrator account and the account you are using to run the User Profile service, and then click **Add**.
4. In the **Permissions for <account name>** box, select the **Full Control** check box, and then click **OK**.

▶ Start the User Profile Synchronization service

1. In SharePoint Central Administration, on the System Settings page, click **Manage Services on Server**.
2. Next to the User Profile Synchronization service, click **Start**.
3. In the **Select the User Profile Application** dialog box, select the application you just created.
4. In the **Service Account Name and Password** section, type and confirm the password for the service account.
5. Click **OK**.

ⓘ Important

- After you have enabled the User Profile Synchronization service, you can reapply the settings that you used for User Profile Synchronization from your Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment in your new environment. Reapply settings such as connections, property mappings, and filters. For more information about how to configure this service, see [Configure profile synchronization \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/144e5f6e-0c9c-4f01-9b1f-26190d527e85(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/144e5f6e-0c9c-4f01-9b1f-26190d527e85\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/144e5f6e-0c9c-4f01-9b1f-26190d527e85(Office.14).aspx)).
- Note that the User Profile Synchronization service is not available in a stand-alone environment. You must have a server farm installation to use this service.

Now you are ready to upgrade the My Site Web sites.

Upgrade My Site Web sites

If you have My Site Web sites with your environment, you can upgrade them after you have upgraded the Shared Services Provider (SSP) database. You should have created the My Site host Web application when you created your new environment. To upgrade the My Site Web sites, you configure the My Site host URL, and then upgrade the content databases that contain the My Site Web sites.

▶ To configure the My Site host URL

1. In Central Administration, on the Manage Service Applications page, click the User Profile service application that you want to associate with My Site Web sites.
2. On the Manage Profile Service: User Profile Service page, click **Setup My Sites**.
3. Enter the information to set up My Site Web sites, including the new My Site host location and personal site location.

The My Site host is a site collection on the content database, which will have a URL like `http://Fabrikam/my`. The personal site path is the managed path at which all My Site Web sites will be created. If you entered "personal" in the **Location** box, My Site Web sites would be created at `http:// Fabrikam/personal/username`).

-
4. After you set up My Site Web sites, you must reset Internet Information Services (IIS) by opening a Command Prompt window and typing **iisreset /noforce** at the command prompt.

Now that you have created the My Site host URL, you can upgrade the My Site Web sites. Follow the steps in [Add the content databases to the Web applications](#) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/library/38ef5fbb-181b-49bf-aa7a-2d5c47b3811c.aspx#AddDB>) later in this article to attach and upgrade the database or databases that contain My Site Web sites. You can upgrade the My Site Web sites at any time after you have upgraded the SSP database and configured the My Site host URL.

Attach the remaining databases

After you restore the first content database and verify the upgrade by reviewing the upgrade log file, you can continue by restoring and upgrading the next database or databases. You can attach multiple databases at the same time in separate Command Prompt windows to run multiple upgrades at one time. After you successfully restore and upgrade all the sites, content databases, and SSP databases, you can review the sites to make sure that they were upgraded correctly.

Verification: Verify upgrade for additional databases

After upgrading any additional databases, view the Upgrade Status page to monitor progress and verify that the upgrade process is complete. Review the log file to identify any other issues, and then review each upgraded site to find and address any issues with how the content is displayed. For more information, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) and [Manage visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Additional steps

After you have completed the upgrade, there are several steps that you should take to complete the configuration for your upgraded farm. For more information, see [Perform post-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

See Also

[Troubleshoot upgrade issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Perform post-upgrade steps (SharePoint Server 2010)

After you have performed an in-place upgrade or a database attach upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you can verify your upgrade and follow the necessary configuration steps to get your environment ready for your users again.

In this section:

- [Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Before you give your users access to the upgraded environment, perform these steps to make sure everything is working as planned. This article contains steps specific to an in-place upgrade.
- [Perform post-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Similar to the article described above, this article contains steps for making sure that everything is working as planned after a database attach upgrade.
- [Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Upgrade existing Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications that were configured to use forms-based authentication to work with SharePoint Server 2010.
- [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Find out how to tell whether upgrade was completed successfully (both from the software standpoint and from a visual review of your sites) or any issues remain to address. If you must restart upgrade after a failure, you will find the steps to do so in this article.
- [Recovering after a failed upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
Follow these steps if the upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 has failed and you do not have time to continue to troubleshoot the issues or resume the upgrade process.

Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

After you have upgraded the content in your environment to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you must perform some additional steps to make sure that the infrastructure supporting that content is ready to start servicing user requests again. This article describes how to complete these tasks.

In this article:

- [Configure new and upgraded services after in-place upgrade](#)
- [Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for Profile Services](#)
- [Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service](#)
- [Upgrading solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog](#)
- [Have users migrate private My Links to private tags \(Optional\)](#)

Configure new and upgraded services after in-place upgrade

Many new services are available in SharePoint Server 2010. You can enable these new services after you perform an in-place upgrade. You must create service applications to host any new services. You can use the Farm Configuration Wizard to quickly select and enable new services in your farm, or you can configure the services manually. You can also add proxies for any service applications that you want to use with different Web applications. For more information, see [Manage service applications \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0a785758-694c-4c5c-abe6-70a17b490c6e(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0a785758-694c-4c5c-abe6-70a17b490c6e\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0a785758-694c-4c5c-abe6-70a17b490c6e(Office.14).aspx)).

Be sure to configure the Document Conversions Load Balancer service and the Document Conversions Launcher service, and enable document conversions for your Web applications. By default, these services are disabled after upgrade and you must enable them before your users can use document conversions. For more information, see [Manage document conversions \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0bfcaa61-50fd-430f-ba57-c304603401c6(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0bfcaa61-50fd-430f-ba57-c304603401c6\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0bfcaa61-50fd-430f-ba57-c304603401c6(Office.14).aspx)).

Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for Profile Services

Multi-value profile properties data from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 was stored in the Shared Services Provider (SSP) database as part of the Profile Services data. For SharePoint Server 2010, this data must now be converted to taxonomy data and be stored in the managed metadata database. To move and upgrade the data, you must have created a service application for the

Managed Metadata service. After that is complete, you can use a Windows PowerShell cmdlet to upgrade the profile and taxonomy data and move it to the Taxonomy database. This cmdlet reconnects the data to the Managed Metadata and User Profile service applications. You must run this cmdlet for each Managed Metadata property that you want to upgrade; there is no option to specify all properties. Note that the Managed Metadata service does not accept certain characters (such as semicolons, angle brackets, pipes, quotation marks, or tab characters) that were allowable in user profile properties based on choice lists in Office SharePoint Server 2007. If a term or term set uses a character that is no longer accepted, the character is removed and replaced with a space when it is upgraded.

 **Important:**

To upgrade and use taxonomy data, the User Profile service application proxy and Managed Metadata service application proxy must be in the same proxy group.

Before you upgrade the taxonomy data, look up the ID for the User Profile service application proxy (called the `SPServiceApplicationProxyPipeBand` in Windows PowerShell), locate the list of the managed metadata properties, and then choose the properties you want to upgrade.

 **To find the User Profile service application proxy ID by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Get-SPServiceApplicationProxy
```

This returns a list of service application proxies. Copy the ID for the User Profile service application proxy.

For more information, see [Get-SPServiceApplicationProxy](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/77f3b00a-ae45-4b51-b9dc-8a2faa5dd358(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/77f3b00a-ae45-4b51-b9dc-8a2faa5dd358\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/77f3b00a-ae45-4b51-b9dc-8a2faa5dd358(Office.14).aspx)).

 **To view the name of a managed metadata property**

1. On the SharePoint Central Administration Home page, click **Application Management**.
2. Under **Service Applications**, click **Manage Service Applications**.
3. Click the User Profile service application for your environment to open the Manage Profile Service: *Service name* page.
4. Under **People**, click **Manage User Properties**.
5. Click a property name, and then click **Edit**.
6. Copy the string from the **Name** box.

This is the name to use as the identity for the managed metadata property when you upgrade

the taxonomy data.

 **Important:**

You must be an administrator for the Managed Metadata to upgrade taxonomy data. You use the **Move-SPPProfileManagedMetadataProperty** cmdlet to upgrade the taxonomy data. This cmdlet can take a long time to run, depending on how many profiles are in your environment.

 **To upgrade taxonomy data by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>). You must also be a member of the Term store administrator role for the Managed Metadata service. For more information, see [Managed metadata roles \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/859634ac-d227-40bc-97ec-ee9706594cc4(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/859634ac-d227-40bc-97ec-ee9706594cc4\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/859634ac-d227-40bc-97ec-ee9706594cc4(Office.14).aspx)).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Move-SPPProfileManagedMetadataProperty -ProfileServiceApplicationProxy  
<SPServiceApplicationProxyPipeBind> -Identity <Identity> [-AvailableForTagging  
Yes] [-TermSetName]
```

Where

- *<SPServiceApplicationProxyPipeBind>* is the ID for the User Profile service application proxy
- *<Identity>* is the name of the managed metadata property you want to move
- **AvailableForTagging** determines whether the terms in the resulting term set can be used for managed metadata tagging. The default value is **No**. Do not mark term sets that include more than 20,000 terms with this property. This is because terms marked as available for tagging are cached on the client side and if you have thousands or millions of terms marked as available for tagging, it can significantly reduce client performance.
- **TermSetName** specifies whether to create the term set name. If this parameter is not specified, the property is mapped to the **Keywords** term set.

For more information, see [Move-SPPProfileManagedMetadataProperty](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ad0b82ea-cfce-4e88-9bc1-ecae82f31c0b(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ad0b82ea-cfce-4e88-9bc1-ecae82f31c0b\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ad0b82ea-cfce-4e88-9bc1-ecae82f31c0b(Office.14).aspx)).

When you upgrade, any photos that were stored as profile pictures must be updated. If you do not update the photo store data, either no photos will be displayed or some photos might appear distorted. To update the photo store, you use the **Update-SPPProfilePhotoStore** Windows PowerShell cmdlet.

This cmdlet might take a long time to run if you have many profiles and many photos. The cmdlet copies the user photos from wherever they are stored (usually in the Shared Pictures library on their My Site Web site) and puts them in the User Photos library on the My Site host. The process also generates small, medium, and large thumbnail sizes of the pictures that are the correct sizes to be used in the various controls and Web Parts for My Site profile photos. Before you run this cmdlet, check the quotas for your My Site Web sites and make sure there is plenty of space available for storing the photos — you must have at least 10 KB of space per user.

▶ **To update photo store data by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>). You must also be a site collection administrator for the My Site host, and you must be a User Profile service application administrator with the Manage Profiles permission.
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Update-SPProfilePhotoStore -MySiteHostLocation <URL of the My Site Host>
```

For more information, see [Update-SPProfilePhotoStore](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/023652c5-e25d-493e-91a3-df5a0dc1b166(Office.14).aspx)

([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/023652c5-e25d-493e-91a3-df5a0dc1b166\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/023652c5-e25d-493e-91a3-df5a0dc1b166(Office.14).aspx)).

Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service

The Single Sign-on (SSO) service that was available in Office SharePoint Server 2007 has been replaced with the Secure Store service in SharePoint Server 2010. There is no direct upgrade path for the data and settings from SSO to the Secure Store service, but you can migrate data from the SSO database to a new Secure Store database. Excel Services Application must have the Secure Store service account to function correctly. To upgrade SSO data to the Secure Store service for use with Excel Services Application and Business Data Connectivity services, you perform the following steps:

1. Provision a Secure Store service application and provision the new, unattended service account for use with Excel Services Application.

You must provision the Secure Store service before you can upgrade data from the SSO service. And you must configure an unattended service account for Excel Services Application to function correctly. For detailed steps to create and configure the Secure Store service application and create the unattended service account, see [Configure Secure Store Service for Excel Services](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d11e10c-c224-46a6-8c03-07913b38c13e(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d11e10c-c224-46a6-8c03-07913b38c13e\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d11e10c-c224-46a6-8c03-07913b38c13e(Office.14).aspx)).

-
2. Use the Windows PowerShell **Upgrade-SPSingleSignOnDatabase** cmdlet to migrate the application definitions from the SSO database to the Secure Store database as target applications.
 3. Use the Windows PowerShell **Disable-SPSingleSignOn** cmdlet to disable the SSO service on an upgraded farm server (in-place upgrade only).

▶ **To upgrade SSO data to the Secure Store service by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>). You must have read access to both the old SSO database and the new Secure Store service database to run this cmdlet.
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Upgrade-SPSingleSignOnDatabase -SSOConnectionString <SSOConnectionString> -  
SecureStoreConnectionString <SecureStoreConnectionString> -SecureStorePassphrase  
Passphrase>
```

Where:

- <SSOConnectionString> is a valid connection string to the SSO database.
- <SecureStoreConnectionString> is a valid connection string to the Secure Store database.
- <Passphrase> is the passphrase to use when connecting to the Secure Store service.

For more information, see [Upgrade-SPSingleSignOnDatabase](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/b7b7d9fe-548f-4059-bfe5-c771e54a697c(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/b7b7d9fe-548f-4059-bfe5-c771e54a697c\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/b7b7d9fe-548f-4059-bfe5-c771e54a697c(Office.14).aspx)).

▶ **To disable the SSO service by using Windows PowerShell (in-place upgrade only)**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Disable-SPSingleSignOn -ServerName <ServerName>
```

Where:

- <ServerName> is the name of the server running the SSO service.

For more information, see [Disable-SPSingleSignOn](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/a6abed95-) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/library/a6abed95->

Upgrading solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog

During upgrade from Office SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010, for each Business Data Catalog service running in Office SharePoint Server 2007, two services are instantiated in SharePoint Server 2010:

- An Application Registry service to store application definitions that are compatible with the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog object model.
- A Business Data Connectivity service to store BDC models, which are compatible with the new SharePoint Server 2010 Business Data Connectivity services object model.

For each application definition in the Business Data Catalog, a copy of it is placed in the Application Registry service and an upgraded version of it, based on the new object model, is placed in the Business Data Connectivity service.

Solutions that used custom Web Parts, custom search connectors, and other custom code that depended on application definitions in Office SharePoint Server 2007 will continue to work in SharePoint Server 2010 by using the Application Registry service. However, if your solution depends on the Web Parts that are provided by Office SharePoint Server 2007 and SharePoint Server 2010 by default (such as the Business Data List Web Part or the Business Data Actions Web Part), you must upgrade your solution to use the upgraded application definitions (called "BDC models") in the Business Data Connectivity service, because those Web Parts have been upgraded to use the new object model provided by the new service.

For more information about upgrading the Business Data Catalog service to SharePoint Server 2010, see [Plan to upgrade to Business Connectivity Services \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Have users migrate private My Links to private tags (Optional)

The My Site feature in Office SharePoint Server 2007 included a bookmarking feature known as My Links. In SharePoint Server, this functionality is replaced by private tags. Users can continue to use the My Links Web Part, or they can migrate their links manually to their set of private tags. This is a manual process that each user can perform on his or her My Site.

► To convert a private link to a private tag

1. Navigate to the following URL: `http://my_site_url/_layouts/myquicklinks.aspx`.
2. Select the check box next to the link or links that you want to convert.
3. Click **Create Tag from Link**.

To view the tags, on your Profile page (http://my_site_url/Person.aspx), click **Tags and Notes**, and then under **Refine by type**, click **Private**.

Perform post-upgrade steps for a database attach upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

After you have upgraded the content in your environment to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you must perform some additional steps to make sure that the infrastructure supporting that content is ready to start servicing user requests again. This article describes how to complete these tasks.

In this article:

- [Reapply administrator permissions for services](#)
- [Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for Profile Services](#)
- [Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service](#)
- [Upgrading solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog](#)
- [Update links that are used in any upgraded InfoPath form templates](#)
- [Have users migrate private My Links to private tags \(Optional\)](#)

Reapply administrator permissions for services

By default, farm administrators have permissions to all services when you perform a database attach upgrade. If you want to apply more restrictive permissions, do so now.

Upgrade profile properties to taxonomy data and update the photo store for Profile Services

Multi-value profile properties data from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 was stored in the Shared Services Provider (SSP) database as part of the Profile Services data. For SharePoint Server 2010, this data must now be converted to taxonomy data and be stored in the managed metadata database. To move and upgrade the data, you must have created a service application for the Managed Metadata service. After that is complete, you can use a Windows PowerShell cmdlet to upgrade the profile and taxonomy data and move it to the Taxonomy database. This cmdlet reconnects the data to the Managed Metadata and User Profile service applications. You must run this cmdlet for each Managed Metadata property that you want to upgrade; there is no option to specify all properties. Note that the Managed Metadata service does not accept certain characters (such as semicolons, angle brackets, pipes, quotation marks, or tab characters) that were allowable in user profile properties based on choice lists in Office SharePoint Server 2007. If a term or term set uses a character that is no longer accepted, the character is removed and replaced with a space when it is upgraded.

 **Important:**

To upgrade and use taxonomy data, the User Profile service application proxy and Managed Metadata service application proxy must be in the same proxy group.

Before you upgrade the taxonomy data, look up the ID for the User Profile service application proxy (called the `SPServiceApplicationProxyPipeBand` in Windows PowerShell), locate the list of the managed metadata properties, and then choose the properties you want to upgrade.

▶ **To find the User Profile service application proxy ID by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Get-SPServiceApplicationProxy
```

This returns a list of service application proxies. Copy the ID for the User Profile service application proxy.

For more information, see [Get-SPServiceApplicationProxy](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/77f3b00a-ae45-4b51-b9dc-8a2faa5dd358(Office.14).aspx)

([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/77f3b00a-ae45-4b51-b9dc-8a2faa5dd358\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/77f3b00a-ae45-4b51-b9dc-8a2faa5dd358(Office.14).aspx)).

▶ **To view the name of a managed metadata property**

1. On the SharePoint Central Administration Home page, click **Application Management**.
2. Under **Service Applications**, click **Manage Service Applications**.
3. Click the User Profile service application for your environment to open the Manage Profile Service: *Service name* page.
4. Under **People**, click **Manage User Properties**.
5. Click a property name, and then click **Edit**.
6. Copy the string from the **Name** box.

This is the name to use as the identity for the managed metadata property when you upgrade the taxonomy data.

 **Important:**

You must be an administrator for the Managed Metadata to upgrade taxonomy data. You use the **Move-SPProfileManagedMetadataProperty** cmdlet to upgrade the taxonomy data. This cmdlet can take a long time to run, depending on how many profiles are in your environment.

► **To upgrade taxonomy data by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>). You must also be a member of the Term store administrator role for the Managed Metadata service. For more information, see [Managed metadata roles \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/859634ac-d227-40bc-97ec-ee9706594cc4(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/859634ac-d227-40bc-97ec-ee9706594cc4\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/859634ac-d227-40bc-97ec-ee9706594cc4(Office.14).aspx)).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Move-SPProfileManagedMetadataProperty -ProfileServiceApplicationProxy  
<SPServiceApplicationProxyPipeBind> -Identity <Identity> [-AvailableForTagging  
Yes] [-TermSetName]
```

Where

- *<SPServiceApplicationProxyPipeBind>* is the ID for the User Profile service application proxy
- *<Identity>* is the name of the managed metadata property you want to move
- **AvailableForTagging** determines whether the terms in the resulting term set can be used for managed metadata tagging. The default value is **No**. Do not mark term sets that include more than 20,000 terms with this property. This is because terms marked as available for tagging are cached on the client side and if you have thousands or millions of terms marked as available for tagging, it can significantly reduce client performance.
- **TermSetName** specifies whether to create the term set name. If this parameter is not specified, the property is mapped to the **Keywords** term set.

For more information, see [Move-SPProfileManagedMetadataProperty](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ad0b82ea-cfce-4e88-9bc1-ecae82f31c0b(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ad0b82ea-cfce-4e88-9bc1-ecae82f31c0b\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/ad0b82ea-cfce-4e88-9bc1-ecae82f31c0b(Office.14).aspx)).

When you upgrade, any photos that were stored as profile pictures must be updated. If you do not update the photo store data, either no photos will be displayed or some photos might appear distorted. To update the photo store, you use the **Update-SPProfilePhotoStore** Windows PowerShell cmdlet. This cmdlet might take a long time to run if you have many profiles and many photos. The cmdlet copies the user photos from wherever they are stored (usually in the Shared Pictures library on their My Site Web site) and puts them in the User Photos library on the My Site host. The process also generates small, medium, and large thumbnail sizes of the pictures that are the correct sizes to be used in the various controls and Web Parts for My Site profile photos. Before you run this cmdlet, check the quotas for your My Site Web sites and make sure there is plenty of space available for storing the photos — you must have at least 10 KB of space per user.

► **To update photo store data by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>). You must also be a site collection administrator for the My Site host, and you must be a User Profile service application administrator with the Manage Profiles permission.
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Update-SPProfilePhotoStore -MySiteHostLocation <URL of the My Site Host>
```

For more information, see [Update-SPProfilePhotoStore](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/023652c5-e25d-493e-91a3-df5a0dc1b166(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/023652c5-e25d-493e-91a3-df5a0dc1b166\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/023652c5-e25d-493e-91a3-df5a0dc1b166(Office.14).aspx)).

Create and configure the Secure Store service application and migrate SSO data to the Secure Store service

The Single Sign-on (SSO) service that was available in Office SharePoint Server 2007 has been replaced with the Secure Store service in SharePoint Server 2010. There is no direct upgrade path for the data and settings from SSO to the Secure Store service, but you can migrate data from the SSO database to a new Secure Store database. Excel Services Application must have the Secure Store service account to function correctly.

To upgrade SSO data to the Secure Store service for use with Excel Services Application and Business Data Connectivity services, you perform the following steps:

1. Provision a Secure Store service application and provision the new, unattended service account for use with Excel Services Application.
You must provision the Secure Store service before you can upgrade data from the SSO service. And you must configure an unattended service account for Excel Services Application to function correctly. For detailed steps to create and configure the Secure Store service application and create the unattended service account, see [Configure Secure Store Service for Excel Services](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d11e10c-c224-46a6-8c03-07913b38c13e(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d11e10c-c224-46a6-8c03-07913b38c13e\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2d11e10c-c224-46a6-8c03-07913b38c13e(Office.14).aspx)).
2. Use the Windows PowerShell **Upgrade-SPSingleSignOnDatabase** cmdlet to migrate the application definitions from the SSO database to the Secure Store database as target applications.
3. Use the Windows PowerShell **Disable-SPSingleSignOn** cmdlet to disable the SSO service on an upgraded farm server (in-place upgrade only).

▶ **To upgrade SSO data to the Secure Store service by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>). You must have read access to both the old SSO database and the new Secure Store service database to run this cmdlet.
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Upgrade-SPSingleSignOnDatabase -SSOConnectionString <SSOConnectionString> -  
SecureStoreConnectionString <SecureStoreConnectionString> -SecureStorePassphrase  
Passphrase>
```

Where:

- <SSOConnectionString> is a valid connection string to the SSO database.
- <SecureStoreConnectionString> is a valid connection string to the Secure Store database.
- <Passphrase> is the passphrase to use when connecting to the Secure Store service.

For more information, see [Upgrade-SPSingleSignOnDatabase](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/b7b7d9fe-548f-4059-bfe5-c771e54a697c(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/b7b7d9fe-548f-4059-bfe5-c771e54a697c\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/b7b7d9fe-548f-4059-bfe5-c771e54a697c(Office.14).aspx)).

▶ **To disable the SSO service by using Windows PowerShell (in-place upgrade only)**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Disable-SPSingleSignOn -ServerName <ServerName>
```

Where:

- <ServerName> is the name of the server running the SSO service.

For more information, see [Disable-SPSingleSignOn](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/a6abed95-1e3d-449f-a319-4f41a49e1fd0(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/a6abed95-1e3d-449f-a319-4f41a49e1fd0\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/a6abed95-1e3d-449f-a319-4f41a49e1fd0(Office.14).aspx)).

Upgrading solutions that depend on the Business Data Catalog

If you used the database attach method to upgrade and you want to continue to use the external data that is accessed through one or more application definitions, you must complete the following tasks:

1. In your previous environment, export the application definitions (models) that are required by your solution from the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Business Data Catalog. For more information, see [Export application definition](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc816952(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc816952\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc816952(Office.12).aspx)).
2. Update the solution to use the object model and features of the Microsoft Business Connectivity Services. This includes updating the application definition file to be compatible with Microsoft Business Connectivity Services. For information about the Business Data Connectivity service object model, see [Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Software Development Kit](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166117) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=166117>).
3. In your new environment, after upgrade, import the updated model into the Business Data Connectivity service. For more information, see [Manage BDC models \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7b6fced6-c8a9-4d79-a11a-8cf3445c52bf(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7b6fced6-c8a9-4d79-a11a-8cf3445c52bf\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7b6fced6-c8a9-4d79-a11a-8cf3445c52bf(Office.14).aspx)).

Update links that are used in any upgraded InfoPath form templates

For a database attach upgrade, you exported and imported any InfoPath form templates in your environment when you created the new environment. After upgrade, you can now update the links that are used in those upgraded form templates to point to the correct URLs by using a Windows PowerShell cmdlet. Note that this cmdlet does not update any links that were hard-coded into scripts, data connections, or assemblies.

To update InfoPath form template links by using Windows PowerShell

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **Administrative Tools**.
3. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
4. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt), type the following command:

```
Update-SPInfoPathAdminFileURL -find <OldUURLtoReplace> -replace <NewURL>
```

For more information, see [Update-SPInfoPathAdminFileUrl](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0d3991ec-dfff-406b-b35d-d452a51dfc6c(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0d3991ec-dfff-406b-b35d-d452a51dfc6c\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0d3991ec-dfff-406b-b35d-d452a51dfc6c(Office.14).aspx)).

Have users migrate private My Links to private tags (Optional)

The My Site feature in Office SharePoint Server 2007 included a bookmarking feature known as My Links. In SharePoint Server, this functionality is replaced by private tags. Users can continue to use the My Links Web Part, or they can migrate their links manually to their set of private tags. This is a manual process that each user can perform on his or her My Site.

To convert a private link to a private tag

1. Navigate to the following URL: http://my_site_url/_layouts/myquicklinks.aspx.
2. Select the check box next to the link or links that you want to convert.
3. Click **Create Tag from Link**.

To view the tags, on your Profile page (http://my_site_url/Person.aspx), click **Tags and Notes**, and then under **Refine by type**, click **Private**.


Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application (SharePoint Server 2010)

The procedures in this article provide guidance to enable you to configure forms-based authentication for a Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 claims-based Web application. Perform the steps in the following procedures to configure a forms-based Web application to use an LDAP provider.

- [Configure a forms-based Web application to use an LDAP provider by using Central Administration](#)
- [Configure the LDAP Web.Config files](#)
- [Configure a forms-based Web application to use an LDAP provider by using Windows PowerShell](#)

Configure a forms-based Web application to use an LDAP provider by using Central Administration

Perform the steps in the following procedure to use Central Administration to configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application.

 **To configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application by using Central Administration**

1. Verify that the user account that is performing this procedure is a site collection administrator.
2. In Central Administration, in the **Application Management** section, click **Manage web applications**.
3. In the **Contribute** group of the ribbon, click **New**.
4. In the **Authentication** section of the **Create New Web Application** dialog box, click **Claims Based Authentication**.
5. In the **Claims Authentication Types** section, select **Enable Forms Based Authentication (FBA)**.
6. Type a membership provider name and a role manager name. In the example Web.Config file depicted in this article, the name of the membership provider is **membership**, and the name of the role manager is **rolemanager**.
7. Click **OK** to create the Web application.

Configure the LDAP Web.Config files

After you have successfully created the Web application (described in the preceding procedure), modify the following Web.Config files:

- The Central Administration Web application Web.Config file
- The Security Token Service Web.Config file
- The forms-based authentication claims-based Web application Web.Config file

▶ To configure the Central Administration Web.Config file

1. Start IIS Manager by typing **INETMGR** at a command prompt.
2. Go to the **SharePoint Central Administration** site in IIS.
3. Right-click **SharePoint Central Administration** and then click **Explore**.
4. Open the Web.Config file.
5. Find the <Configuration> <system.web> section and add the following entry:

```
<membership defaultProvider="AspNetSqlMembershipProvider">
  <providers>
    <add name="membership"
      type="Microsoft.Office.Server.Security.LdapMembershipProvider,
Microsoft.Office.Server, Version=14.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=71e9bce111e9429c"
      server="yourserver.com"
      port="389"
      useSSL="false"
      userDNAttribute="distinguishedName"
      userNameAttribute="sAMAccountName"
      userContainer="OU=UserAccounts,DC=internal,DC=yourcompany,DC= distinguishedName
(of your userContainer)"
      userObjectClass="person"
      userFilter="(ObjectClass=person)"
      scope="Subtree"
      otherRequiredUserAttributes="sn,givenname,cn" />
  </providers>
</membership>
<roleManager enabled="true" defaultProvider="AspNetWindowsTokenRoleProvider" >
  <providers>
    <add name="roleManager"
```

```

        type="Microsoft.Office.Server.Security.LdapRoleProvider, Microsoft.Office.Server,
Version=14.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=71e9bce111e9429c"
        server="yourserver.com"
        port="389"
        useSSL="false"
        groupContainer="DC=internal,DC=yourcompany,DC= distinguishedName (of your
groupContainer) "
        groupNameAttribute="cn"
        groupNameAlternateSearchAttribute="samAccountName"
        groupMemberAttribute="member"
        userNameAttribute="sAMAccountName"
        dnAttribute="distinguishedName"
        groupFilter="(ObjectClass=group)"
        userFilter="(ObjectClass=person)"
        scope="Subtree" />
    </providers>
</roleManager>

```



Important:

After you have added the preceding entry, save and close the Web.Config file.

▶ To configure the Security Token Service Web.Config file

1. Start IIS Manager by typing **INETMGR** at a command prompt.
2. Go to the **SharePoint Web Services** site.
3. Go to the **SecurityTokenServiceApplication** sub-site.
4. Right-click **SecurityTokenServiceApplication** and then click **Explore**.
5. Open the Web.Config file.
6. Find the <Configuration> <system.web> section and add the following entry:

```

<membership>
    <providers>
        <add name="membership"
            type="Microsoft.Office.Server.Security.LdapMembershipProvider,
Microsoft.Office.Server, Version=14.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=71e9bce111e9429c"
            server="yourserver.com"

```

```
port="389"
useSSL="false"
userDNAttribute="distinguishedName"
userNameAttribute="sAMAccountName"
userContainer="OU=UserAccounts,DC=internal,DC=yourcompany,DC=com"
userObjectClass="person"
userFilter="( & (ObjectClass=person) )"
scope="Subtree"
otherRequiredUserAttributes="sn,givenname,cn" />
</providers>
</membership>
<roleManager enabled="true" >
  <providers>
    <add name="rolemanager"
      type="Microsoft.Office.Server.Security.LdapRoleProvider, Microsoft.Office.Server,
Version=14.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=71e9bce111e9429c"
      server="yourserver.com"
      port="389"
      useSSL="false"
      groupContainer="DC=internal,DC=yourcompany,DC=com"
      groupNameAttribute="cn"
      groupNameAlternateSearchAttribute="samAccountName"
      groupMemberAttribute="member"
      userNameAttribute="sAMAccountName"
      dnAttribute="distinguishedName"
      groupFilter="( & (ObjectClass=group) )"
      userFilter="( & (ObjectClass=person) )"
      scope="Subtree" />
  </providers>
</roleManager>
```



Important:

After you have added the preceding entry, save and close the Web.Config file.

▶ To configure the forms-based authentication claims-based Web application Web.Config file

1. Start IIS Manager by typing **INETMGR** at a command prompt.
2. Go to the **Claims Forms** site.
3. Right-click **Claims Forms** and then click **Explore**.
4. Open the Web.Config file.
5. Find the `<Configuration> <system.web>` section.
6. Find the `<membership defaultProvider="i">` section and add the following entry:

```
<add name="membership"
      type="Microsoft.Office.Server.Security.LdapMembershipProvider,
Microsoft.Office.Server, Version=14.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=71e9bce111e9429c"
      server="yourserver.com"
      port="389"
      useSSL="false"
      userDNAttribute="distinguishedName"
      userNameAttribute="sAMAccountName"
      userContainer="OU=UserAccounts,DC=internal, DC=yourcompany,DC=com"
      userObjectClass="person"
      userFilter="( & (ObjectClass=person)) "
      scope="Subtree"
      otherRequiredUserAttributes="sn,givenname,cn" />
```

Find the `<roleManager defaultProvider="c" enabled="true" cacheRolesInCookie="false">` section and add the following entry:

```
<add name="roleManager"
      type="Microsoft.Office.Server.Security.LdapRoleProvider, Microsoft.Office.Server,
Version=14.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=71e9bce111e9429c"
      server="yourserver.com"
      port="389"
      useSSL="false"
      groupContainer="DC=internal,DC=yourcompany,DC=com"
      groupNameAttribute="cn"
```



```
groupNameAlternateSearchAttribute="samAccountName"
groupMemberAttribute="member"
userNameAttribute="sAMAccountName"
dnAttribute="distinguishedName"
groupFilter="(&!(ObjectClass=group))"
userFilter="(&!(ObjectClass=person))"
scope="Subtree" />
```

**Important:**

After you have added the preceding entry, save and close the Web.Config file.

**Warning:**

Do not overwrite any existing entries in this Web.Config file.

Configure a forms-based Web application to use an LDAP provider by using Windows PowerShell

Perform the steps in the following procedure to use Windows PowerShell to configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application.

▶ To configure a forms-based Web application to use an LDAP provider by using Windows PowerShell

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. From the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following:

```
$ap = New-SPAuthenticationProvider -Name "ClaimsForms" -ASPNETMembershipProvider
"membership" -ASPNETRoleProviderName "rolemanager"

$wa = New-SPWebApplication -Name "Claims Windows Web App" -ApplicationPool "Claims
App Pool" -ApplicationPoolAccount "internal\appool"

-Url http://servername -Port 80 -AuthenticationProvider $ap
```

**Note:**

The value of the **ApplicationPoolAccount** parameter must be a managed account on

the farm.

6. After you have successfully created an authentication provider and a Web application, modify the following Web.Config files by using the sample entries provided in the [Configure the LDAP Web.Config files](#) section of this article:
 - To configure the Central Administration Web.Config file
 - To configure the Security Token Service Web.Config file
 - To configure the forms-based authentication claims-based Web application Web.Config file
7. After you have modified the Web.Config files, create a SPClaimsPrincipal and a site collection, as shown in the following example:

```
$cp = New-SPClaimsPrincipal -Identity "membership:SiteOwner" -IdentityType  
FormsUser  
  
$sp = New-SPSite http://servername:port -OwnerAlias $cp.Encode() -Template "STS#0"
```

For more information, see [New-SPClaimsPrincipal](#)
([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0831e64b-3ec0-4016-8128-639991530172\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0831e64b-3ec0-4016-8128-639991530172(Office.14).aspx)).



Note:

We recommend that you use Windows PowerShell when performing command-line administrative tasks. The Stsadm command-line tool has been deprecated, but is included to support compatibility with previous product versions.

See Also

[Migrate from forms-based authentication to claims-based authentication \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites (SharePoint Server 2010)

After you have performed either an in-place upgrade or a database attach upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you must verify that the content was successfully upgraded to the new version. You can verify the status of the upgrade (is it still in progress, or has it been completed successfully or with errors or failures?) and then also review the upgraded sites to see whether any issues remain for you to address. When you follow these steps as part of a trial upgrade, you can use them to identify customizations that have to be reworked before you attempt to upgrade your production environment. When you upgrade your production environment, it is even more critical that you know when the upgrade was completed, which sites have been upgraded successfully, and which sites require additional work before you allow users access to them again.

In some cases, you might have to restart upgrade to finish upgrading your sites. For more information about how to restart upgrade, see [Resume upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In this article:

- [Verify upgrade status](#)
- [Validate the upgraded environment](#)
- [Review upgraded sites](#)

Verify upgrade status

The upgrade process has several phases. For in-place upgrade, you run Setup.exe to install the new software, and then run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard to upgrade the configuration database and the admin content database, and then the SharePoint Central Administration Web site opens. At this point, the content upgrade process starts. There are different ways to check the status of the upgrade process during each of these phases: You can review log files for Setup.exe, for the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, and for the content upgrade. In SharePoint Central Administration, you can view the version number to make sure that it is correct for the version that you upgraded to. Also, you can use the Upgrade Status page in SharePoint Central Administration or the **localupgradestatus** operation in Stsadm to find out which sites have been — or are currently being — upgraded. If upgrade was not successfully completed, you can view the log files to find the issues, address them, and then restart the upgrade process.

Review the log files

To verify that upgrade has succeeded, you can review the following log and error files:

- The Setup.exe log file for SharePoint Server 2010.

The Setup log file is stored in the temp directory for the user account that is running Setup (%USERTEMP% or %WINDIR%\Users\user account\AppData\Local\Temp). It is named SharePoint Server Setup(YYYYMMDDHHMMSSSS).log, where YYYYMMDD is the date and HHMMSSSS is the time (hours in 24-hour clock format, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds).

- The SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard (Psconfig.exe) log file.

The Psconfig.exe log files are located at %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web server extensions\14\LOGS. The logs are named in the following format:

PSCDiagnostics_MM_DD_YYYY_HH_MM_SS_SSS_randomnumber.log, where MM_DD_YY is the date and HH_MM_SS_SSS is the time (hours in 24-hour clock format, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds), and the random number is used to differentiate between possible simultaneous attempts to run the Psconfig.exe program.

- The upgrade log file and the upgrade error log file.

The upgrade log file and the upgrade error log file are located at %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web server extensions\14\LOGS. The logs are named in the following format: Upgrade-YYYYMMDD-HHMMSS-SS.log, where YYYYMMDD is the date and HHMMSS-SS is the time (hours in 24-hour clock format, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds). The upgrade error log file combines all errors and warnings into a shorter file and is named Upgrade-YYYYMMDD-HHMMSS-SS-error.log.

To review the log files to find and troubleshoot issues, start at the top of the files. Errors or warnings may be repeated if they occur for several site collections in the environment, or if they block the upgrade process completely. For example, if you cannot connect to the configuration database, the upgrade process will try (and fail) several times and these attempts will be listed in the log file.

To review the log files

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To view the log files, you must be a member of the local Administrators group on the server.
2. In Windows Explorer, change to the directory that contains the log file that you want to view.
3. Use a text editor to open the log file.
4. In the upgrade log file, search, or visually scan, for the following entry:

Upgrade session finished successfully!

If you find this entry, the installation was successful.

5. If you do not find the entries from the previous step in the upgrade log file, or if you are reviewing one of the other log files, you can identify specific issues that may have contributed to a failure by searching, or visually scanning, through the file for the following terms:
 - Search for **ERROR** in the log files to find any failures (such as failing components and faulty database connections).
 - Search for **WARNING** to find issues such as missing features or components.

To find issues, you may find it useful to use a log parser to run queries against the log files.

If you find blocking issues in the log file, you can resolve the issues and then restart upgrade to continue with the process.

Verify the version number

In addition to viewing the upgrade log file, you can verify that the upgrade was successful by using the SharePoint Central Administration Web site to view the version number on the Servers in Farm page.

▶ To verify the version number on the Servers in Farm page

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To use SharePoint Central Administration, you must be a member of the Farm Administrators group.
2. On the Central Administration Home page, under **System Settings**, click **Manage servers in this farm**.
3. Under **Farm Information**, next to **Configuration database version**, verify that the number starts with "14".

Check upgrade status for sites

To find out which sites have been upgraded or are currently being upgraded, you can use either the Upgrade Status page in SharePoint Central Administration or the **localupgradestatus** operation in Stsadm.exe.

The Upgrade Status page lists the upgrade sessions and gives details about the state of each session — whether it succeeded or failed, and how many errors or warnings occurred for each server. The Upgrade Status page also includes information about the log and error files for the upgrade process and suggests remedies for issues that might have occurred.

To see which sites were missed or skipped during upgrade, you can use the **localupgradestatus** operation in Stsadm.exe. You must run the command on every front-end Web server in a server farm.

▶ To view upgrade status in SharePoint Central Administration

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To use SharePoint Central Administration, you must be a member of the Farm Administrators group.
2. On the Central Administration Home page, under **Upgrade and Migration**, click **Check upgrade status**.

▶ **To view upgrade status from the command line**

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To use Stsadm, you must be a member of the local Administrators group on the server.
2. Click **Start**, right-click **Command Prompt**, and then click **Run as administrator**.
3. In the Command Prompt window, navigate to the following directory:
%COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web Server Extensions\14\bin
4. Type the following command and press ENTER:
Stsadm -o localupgradestatus

For more information about the **localupgradestatus** operation, see [Localupgradestatus: Stsadm operation \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188516&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188516&clcid=0x409>).

Validate the upgraded environment

After you have determined that upgrade was completed successfully, take time to validate your environment. Review the following items:

- Service applications
 - Are they configured correctly?
 - Are the service application proxies configured the way that you want?
 - Do you have to create new connections between farms?
- My Site Web sites
 - Are all the Web Parts working?
 - Are all features associated with the My Site Web sites working?
 - Can users access the sites, or are they seeing "Access Denied" errors?
If the My Site host that they are visiting is not the default My Site host, they may see this error. Check that the service application and proxy associations are correct, and then check that the My Site host is referenced correctly in the User Profile service application. Reset Internet Information Services (IIS) to apply any changes.
- Search
 - Run a crawl, and review the log files.
 - Run search queries, and verify that the queries work as expected and provide appropriate results. Twenty-four hours later, view the query reports and look for issues.
 - Search for people and profiles.
 - Check any Search customizations to make sure that they work as expected.

Review upgraded sites

Review your upgraded sites to identify any issues that must be addressed before you run the upgrade process on your production environment. If you performed an in-place upgrade and chose to use Visual Upgrade, you can use the Visual Upgrade feature to preview the sites in the new user interface. For more information about previewing sites using Visual Upgrade, see [Manage visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

If you want to verify basic functionality, you can create a new site collection by using a representative set of lists, libraries, Web Parts, and so on. Review the new site to make sure that the common, basic elements of your sites are working.

If pages are not rendered, you can check the Site Settings page by going directly to the URL (http://siteurl/_layouts/settings.aspx). If the Site Settings page works and the upgrade has succeeded, there might be issues with the master page or home page. If the Site Settings page does not work, go to the log file to see whether you can get more information about the problem.

Begin by validating high-impact or high-profile sites, and then move on to lower-priority sites. As part of the planning process, you should have identified which sites are high-impact and high-profile and require immediate attention, and which can wait a bit longer.

Use the following checklists to review your upgraded sites and look for issues.

Web Parts

The following table lists issues with Web Parts that can occur after upgrade and how to address them.



Tip:

To test your Web Parts quickly, you can build a new Web Part page that contains all of your custom Web Parts before you test your upgrade, and then review the page for any missing or broken Web Parts after the trial upgrade.

| What to check | What to do if there is a problem |
|--|--|
| Do all the Web Parts from your original site appear in your upgraded site? | <p>If a Web Part zone exists in a customized (<i>unghosted</i>) page, but not in the site definition, the Web Parts from that Web Part zone may have been moved into the bottom zone on the page during the upgrade.</p> <p>Either in Edit Mode for the page in the browser or in Microsoft SharePoint Designer 2010, look for missing Web Parts in the bottom zone or other zones, or check to see whether the Web Parts have been closed. For more information about how to work with Web Parts and Web Part zones in SharePoint Designer 2010, see the SharePoint Designer Help system.</p> |

| What to check | What to do if there is a problem |
|---|--|
| Are the Web Parts displayed correctly (in the correct zone, location, and size)? | Either in Edit Mode for the page in the browser or in SharePoint Designer 2010, drag the Web Part into the correct zone or modify the Web Part properties to correct any sizing or positioning problems. |
| Are there any extra or missing Web Parts? | <p>Open the page either in Edit Mode for the page in the browser or in SharePoint Designer 2010. If you see extra Web Parts on your page, look for closed or inactive Web Parts on the original version of the page. Were the closed or inactive Web Parts opened by the upgrade process? If so, you can modify the Web Part properties to close these Web Parts.</p> <p>If Web Parts are missing, look for errors in SharePoint Designer 2010 such as "Error Rendering Control" or "Missing Assembly." These errors indicate that the Web Part was not installed or was configured incorrectly for the new environment and must be reinstalled or reconfigured.</p> |
| Do the Web Parts work correctly? | <p>Open the page either in Edit Mode for the page in the browser or in SharePoint Designer 2010, and look for errors that indicate that a component or service is missing. Make sure that any components or services that the Web Parts rely on exist in the upgraded site. Particularly for the database attach upgrade approach, you must make sure that you have installed all the components or services that you must have for your Web Parts, and that you have configured them correctly (for example, you have configured the Web.config Safe Controls list).</p> <p>Update and redeploy any Web Parts that exist but no longer function correctly.</p> |
| Are any Web Parts pages still checked out? | If you check out a page to make changes, make sure that you check in the page again. |
| Are your Excel Web Access Web Parts working correctly? Did you re-create your connections correctly? Are external data sources still working? | Verify all connections and external data sources. |

**Tip:**

If you have problems with a Web Part, append **contents=1** to the end of the URL syntax (<http://siteurl/default.aspx?contents=1>), and then press ENTER. This opens the Web Part Maintenance page where you can remove and repair the broken Web Part.

Large lists

By default, large list query throttling is applied after an upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010. If a list is very large, and users use a view or perform a query that exceeds the limit or throttling threshold, the view or query will not be permitted. Check any large lists in your environment and have the site owner or list owner address the issue. For example, they can create indexed columns with filtered views, organize items into folders, set an item limit on the page for a large view, or use an external list.

Styles and appearance

The following table lists common issues with the style and appearance of your Web site after upgrade and how to address them.

**Tip:**

Most of the issues in this section can be solved by correcting the links to an item.

| What to check | What to do if there is a problem |
|--|--|
| Are all the images on your pages displayed correctly? | Verify or fix the links to the images. |
| Are the appropriate cascading style sheet colors and styles used in the appropriate locations? | Verify or fix the links to the cascading style sheet file. Verify the link on the master page. |
| Does the theme that you applied to your site still look the same? | Your site's home page, or other pages on your site, may look different after the site is upgraded. You may have to re-create or revise a theme and reapply it. |
| Do you have any scripted controls that are not working? | Verify or fix the links to the controls. |
| Are your pages displayed correctly in Windows Internet Explorer 8? | Verify that any HTML on the page is in strict XHTML mode. |
| Are any script errors displayed on any pages? | Verify the scripts and links, and verify that any HTML is in strict XHTML mode. |

Permissions

Do the appropriate people and groups still have the correct level of permissions to sites, pages, lists, and items?

You can use the **Check Permissions** button in the Permission Tools section of the ribbon to see who has permissions to which items in a site or subsite.

Customized (unghosted) pages

Customized (unghosted) pages are pages that have been edited and are now unique versions of the pages, instead of the default template pages. The following table lists issues with customized pages that can occur after upgrade and how to address them.

| What to check | What to do if there is a problem |
|---|---|
| Are your customizations still in the correct locations? | <p>Determine whether you have only one issue or a larger problem with the whole page.</p> <p>If you added a brand new page to your original site (for example, if you replaced Default.aspx with a different file instead of changing the existing Default.aspx file), the new page has no association with the site definition. Therefore, it might not resemble the other pages on the upgraded site — nor can it be reset to resemble them. If you want your customized page to have the same look and feel as the other pages on your site, consider creating a brand-new page that is based on the site definition and then transferring your customizations to that new page.</p> |
| Can you still access the editing controls on the pages? | <p>If you customized the editing controls (for example, the Site Actions link or the Edit Page link), check whether they still appear. If they don't appear, you can replace them with the editing controls of the new version by resetting the page to the default version.</p> <p>Use the Reset to Template command in SharePoint Designer to reset the page to the default version (also known as <i>reghosting</i>). After you have restored the default page, you can then reapply your customizations in the browser by applying a different master page, or by reapplying the customizations in SharePoint Designer.</p> |
| Are your customizations still appropriate in the new environment, or do you want to update to the new functionality and look? | <p>If you want the new functionality and features, you must reset any customized pages to use the template. Resetting the page basically discards the customizations and attaches your page to the appropriate master page. Any customizations you want can then be transferred to the master page instead of being stored in individual pages.</p> |

| What to check | What to do if there is a problem |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | Use the Reset to Template command in SharePoint Designer to reset the page to the default version (that is, reghost it). After you have restored the default page, you can then reapply your customizations in the browser by applying a different master page, or by reapplying the customizations in SharePoint Designer. |
| Are any pages still checked out? | If you check out a page to make changes, make sure that you check in the page again. |

See Also

[Resume upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

[Troubleshoot upgrade issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Manage visual upgrade (SharePoint Server 2010)

This article provides procedures related to the Visual Upgrade feature. When you upgrade from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you can choose to use the Visual Upgrade feature to give site collection owners and site owners the opportunity to preserve the previous user interface temporarily. This allows them to update customizations to work in the new user interface. For a full description of Visual Upgrade and related choices, see [Plan visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

In this article:

- [About using Visual Upgrade](#)
- [View status of current user interface](#)
- [Revert sites to previous user interface](#)
- [Force an upgrade to the new user interface](#)
- [Site owner options for visual upgrade](#)

About using Visual Upgrade

When you upgrade, either by using in-place upgrade or by using the database attach upgrade method, you can choose to use Visual Upgrade.

During an in-place upgrade, you make the choice to use Visual Upgrade as a step in the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard. The visual upgrade feature is not available in the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard if you are performing an upgrade on a stand-alone server with built-in database. However, the Visual Upgrade feature is available in this case from the Psconfig command-line tool. You can then use the syntax: `psconfig.exe -cmd upgrade [-preserveolduserexperience <true|false>]`.

During a database attach upgrade, the choice to update to the new user experience or stay in the old user experience is accomplished by using either:

- The **Updateuserexperience** parameter of the **Mount-SPContentDatabase** Windows PowerShell cmdlet.
- The **preserveolduserexperience** parameter of the **addcontentdatabase** Stsadm operation.

For additional information about using these parameters during an upgrade, see [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

View status of current user interface

You can view the current user interface status by generating a list of all Web sites in a site collection and their corresponding visual upgrade data. This is useful if you have set a time limit by which site

owners must have prepared their sites for the new user interface and you want to monitor their progress. The following procedure shows you how to view the current user interface status.

▶ **To view status of current user interface by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
$sc = Get-SPSite http://machinename/sites/collectionname; $sc.GetVisualReport() |  
Format-Table
```

For more information, see [Get-SPSite](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/f3422bf4-0f9b-4f22-94c8-2a0606a31b16(Office.14).aspx). ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/f3422bf4-0f9b-4f22-94c8-2a0606a31b16\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/f3422bf4-0f9b-4f22-94c8-2a0606a31b16(Office.14).aspx))

Revert sites to previous user interface

If a site collection owner or site owner finalizes the new user interface by mistake, or if they have a problem that they cannot solve, you can revert back to the previous user interface by using Windows PowerShell. This procedure shows you how to revert one or all sites in a site collection to the previous user interface.

▶ **To revert sites to the previous user interface by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. To revert a specific site in a site collection to the previous UI, at the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Get-SPSite http://machinename/sites/V3UI | Get-SPWeb "webname" |  
Foreach{$_ .UIVersionConfigurationEnabled=1;$_ .UIVersion=3;$_ .Update();}
```

To revert all sites in a site collection to the previous user interface, at the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Get-SPSite http://machinename/sites/V3UI | Foreach{$_ .  
UIVersionConfigurationEnabled=1;$_ .UIVersion=3;$_ .Update();}
```

For more information, see [Get-SPSite](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/f3422bf4-0f9b-4f22-94c8-2a0606a31b16(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/f3422bf4-0f9b-4f22-94c8-2a0606a31b16\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/f3422bf4-0f9b-4f22-94c8-2a0606a31b16(Office.14).aspx)).

Force an upgrade to the new user interface

If you want to forcibly apply the new user interface after an upgrade has taken place, you might first want to give site collection owners and site owners a specified time during which they can preview the new user interface and fix any issues they might have. When you force an upgrade to the new user interface, you can use a script or use the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard during the initial upgrade. For information about upgrade and the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, see [Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard](#). The following procedure shows you how to programmatically upgrade all site collections and all sites to the new user interface.

▶ To force through an upgrade to the new user interface by using Windows PowerShell

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
$webapp = Get-SPWebApplication http://sitename
foreach ($s in $webapp.sites)
{$s.VisualUpgradeWebs() }
```

For more information, see [Get-SPWebApplication](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/11d6521f-f99c-433e-9ab5-7cf9e953457a(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/11d6521f-f99c-433e-9ab5-7cf9e953457a\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/11d6521f-f99c-433e-9ab5-7cf9e953457a(Office.14).aspx))

To upgrade a single site collection to the new user interface, type the following commands at the Windows PowerShell command prompt:

```
$site = Get-SPSite http://server
$site.VisualUpgradeWebs()
```

To upgrade a single site to the new user interface, type the following commands at the Windows PowerShell command prompt:

```
$web = Get-SPWeb http://server/site
$web.UIVersion = 4
$web.UIVersionConfigurationEnabled = 0
$web.Update()
```

Site owner options for visual upgrade

The site owner can use the Site Setting user interface to toggle between the **Use the previous user interface** and **Preview the updated user interface** options. Once the site owner is satisfied with how the site looks, the new UI can be finalized by selecting the **Update the user interface** option.

The following table describes the different upgrade options that are available for the site owner to choose for their sites. The upgrade modes are available from the Site Settings page in the **Title, Description, and Icon** section.

| Mode type | Description |
|---|---|
| Use the previous user interface | Site owners use this mode to have all their sites use the interface from Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007. |
| Preview the updated user interface | Site owners use this mode to evaluate how their sites will look and function in the new interface. When this mode is chosen, features from the previous version interface will not be available. |
| Update the user interface | Site owners use this option when they are satisfied with the changes and are ready to switch to the new user interface. If needed, an administrator can restore the user interface to the previous version interface. |

See Also

[Plan visual upgrade \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Upgrade from other versions or other products

This section contains information about how to upgrade to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 from related SharePoint products.

In this section:

- [Upgrading from SharePoint Portal Server 2003 to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
Understand using database attach upgrades to upgrade your content from Microsoft Office SharePoint Portal Server 2003 to SharePoint Server 2010.
- [Upgrade from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
Follow the steps in this article to upgrade your content from Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010 by using either the in-place or database attach upgrade methods, and then apply the new features to existing sites.
- [Upgrade from a SharePoint Server 2010 Standard CAL to an Enterprise CAL](#)
Find out how you upgrade from a Standard to an Enterprise edition of SharePoint Server 2010.
- [Upgrade from a trial version of SharePoint Server 2010](#)
Use the procedure in this article to upgrade from a trial version to a licensed edition of SharePoint Server 2010.

For descriptions of additional cross-product upgrade paths that are allowed, see the following articles:

- [Review supported and unsupported upgrade paths \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
- [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Upgrading from SharePoint Portal Server 2003 to SharePoint Server 2010

You cannot upgrade directly from Microsoft Office SharePoint Portal Server 2003 to Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010.

The changes between versions are too great, and the hardware requirements differ so much between versions that a direct, in-place upgrade is not possible or supported. You can, however, perform a series of database attach upgrades to first upgrade your content to Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 and then to SharePoint Server 2010. This article describes the process of performing this double-database attach upgrade.



Note:

During this entire process, your old environment should be offline, to prevent users from making changes in the old environment while you are upgrading. After you have finished and validated the upgrade, you can grant access to your users again in the SharePoint Server 2010 environment.

In this article:

- [Process overview](#)
- [Before you begin](#)
- [Prepare to upgrade](#)
- [Prepare your farms](#)
- [Perform the first upgrade](#)
- [Perform the second upgrade](#)

Process overview

Because this upgrade approach combines two upgrade processes that have already been documented, this article describes how the steps from each process fit together into the overall process. It does not provide details for every step, because those steps are available in the following articles:

- [Deploy a new server farm, then migrate content databases \(Upgrade\)](#)
(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188501>)
- [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

These articles, combined with this roadmap, give you the information you need to perform the double-database attach upgrade.



Important

-
- Make sure that you try out this entire process in a test environment before you attempt to upgrade your actual live content. For more information about how to test your upgrade processes, see the following content:

Upgrade sequence

To upgrade your content across the two versions, follow these steps.

1. Prepare to upgrade

- a. Prepare your original farm by running the pre-upgrade scan tool and making an inventory of all of your customizations.
- b. Set up a small, temporary farm that is running Office SharePoint Server 2007.
- c. Set up your full SharePoint Server 2010 farm, and verify that it is configured and running correctly.

2. First upgrade: Upgrade the content to Office SharePoint Server 2007

- a. Detach the content databases from the old farm, and then take that farm offline.
Alternatively, you can leave the databases attached and make a copy of the databases if you want to ensure that your original farm can be restored to use quickly.
- b. Attach the content databases to the Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm and upgrade them.
- c. Verify that the content has been upgraded and that the Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm is working correctly.

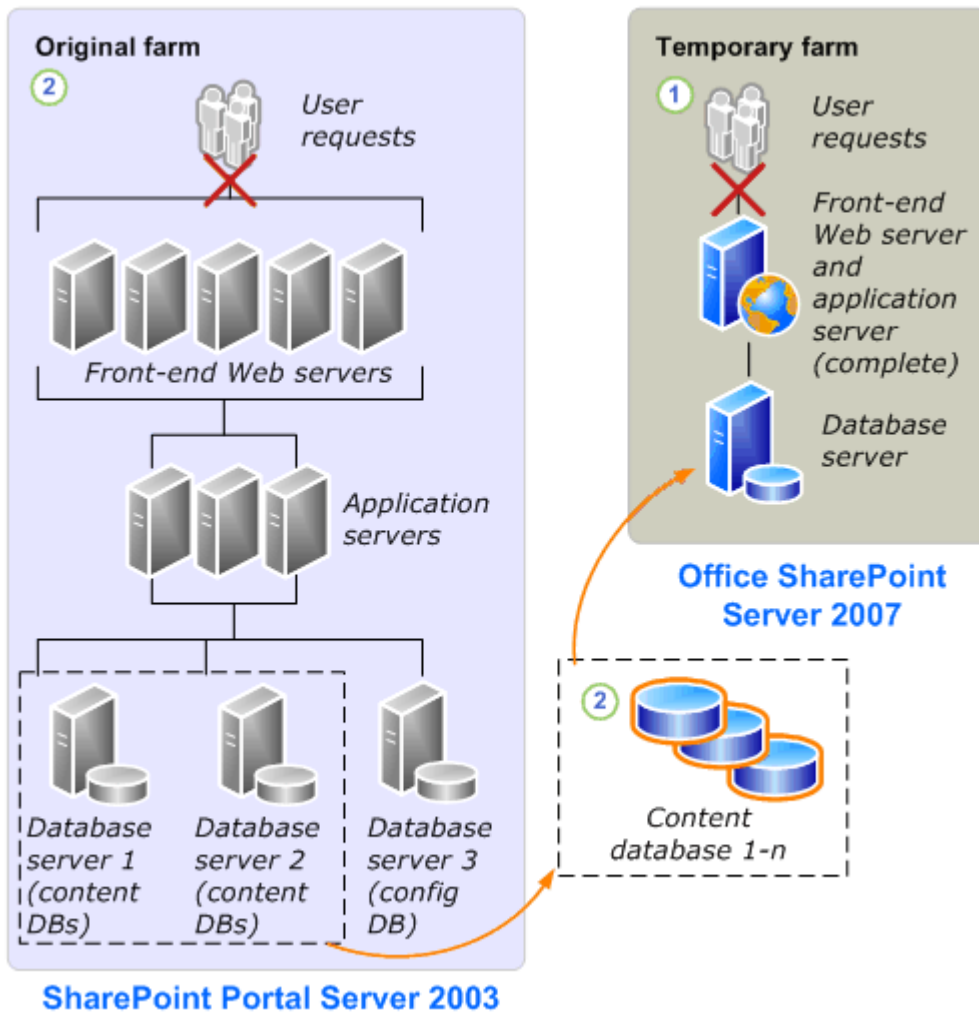
3. Second upgrade: Upgrade the content to SharePoint Server 2010

- a. Detach the content databases from the Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm.
- b. Attach the content databases to the SharePoint Server 2010 farm and upgrade them (optionally, you can upgrade them in parallel).
- c. Verify that the content has been upgraded and that the SharePoint Server 2010 farm is working correctly.

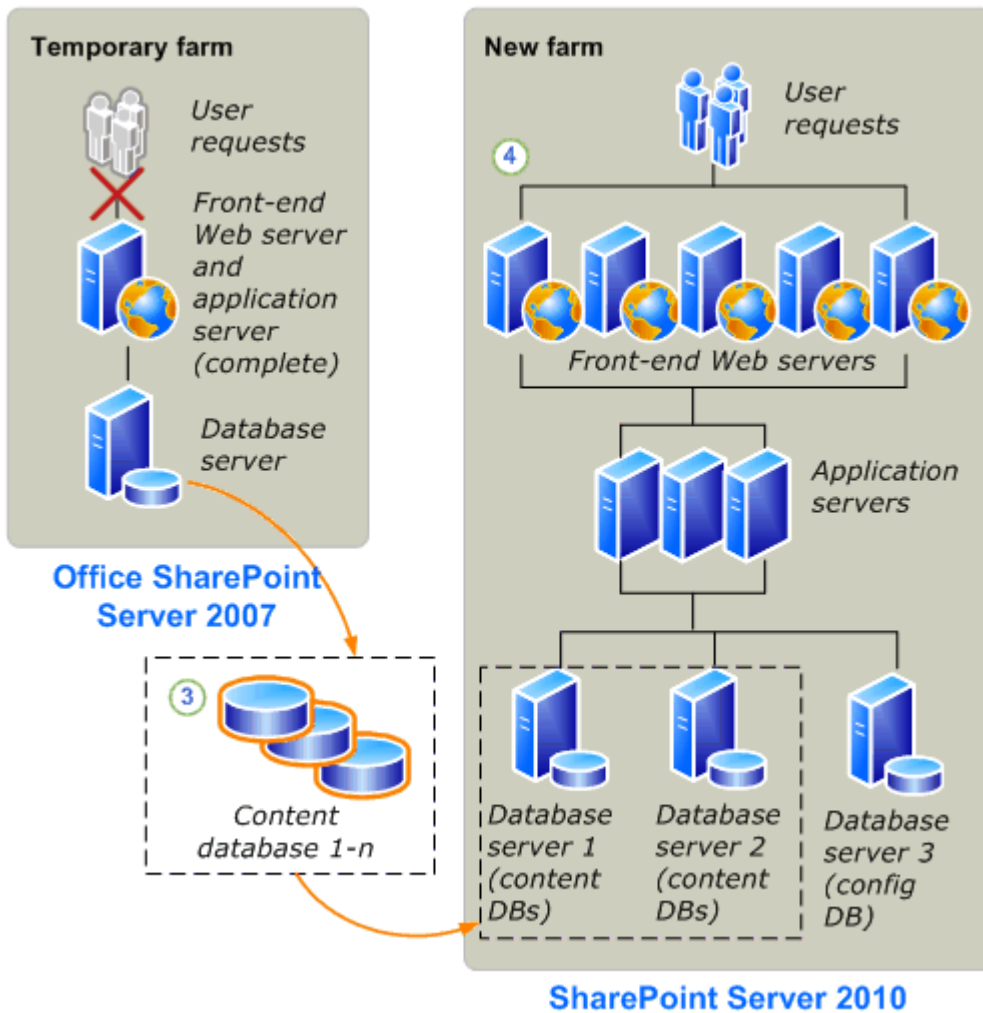
4. Start serving requests on the SharePoint Server 2010 farm.

The following diagrams illustrate this process:

The database attach upgrade to Office SharePoint Server 2007.



The database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010.



Before you begin

Before you begin your upgrade, review the following information about permissions, hardware requirements, and software requirements. Follow the specified steps to install or configure prerequisite software or to modify settings.

Review required permissions

- When you create your temporary environment for Office SharePoint Server 2007, you must have the appropriate permissions. For more information, see [Plan for administrative and service accounts \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188586&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188586&clcid=0x409>).

-
- When you create and configure your destination SharePoint Server 2010 farm, you must have the appropriate permissions. For more information, see [Administrative and service accounts required for initial deployment \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx)).

Review required hardware and software

- When you create your temporary environment for Office SharePoint Server 2007, you must meet specific hardware and software requirements. For more information, see [Determine hardware and software requirements \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188589&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188589&clcid=0x409>).
- When you create and configure your destination SharePoint Server 2010 farm, you must meet different hardware and software requirements. For more information, see [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)).

In some environments, you must coordinate the procedures for moving databases to a separate farm with the database administrator. Make sure that you follow any applicable policies and guidelines for handling databases.

Prepare to upgrade

Because you are performing two upgrades, you need to understand all of the steps involved both in upgrading to Office SharePoint Server 2007 and to SharePoint Server 2010. The following content is available to help you understand these upgrade processes:

Preparing to upgrade to Office SharePoint Server 2007

- Read the [Plan and prepare for upgrade](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188588&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188588&clcid=0x409>) chapter on TechNet. In particular, read the following articles:
 - [How the upgrade process works \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188583&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188583&clcid=0x409>)
 - [Determine how to handle customizations \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188594&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188594&clcid=0x409>)
 - [Develop new custom site definitions and create upgrade definition files \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188584&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188584&clcid=0x409>)
- Read the [Perform pre-upgrade steps](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188587&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188587&clcid=0x409>) chapter on TechNet. You must perform the following steps for a database attach upgrade (called *database migration* in this version):
 - [Install Service Pack 3 for Windows SharePoint Services 2.0 and SharePoint Portal Server 2003](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262283(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262283\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262283(Office.12).aspx))

-
- [Run the pre-upgrade scan tool \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262231(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262231\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262231(Office.12).aspx))



Important:

You follow these steps on your existing SharePoint Portal Server 2003 farm.

Preparing to upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010

- Plan and prepare for upgrade. Read the following article on TechNet:
 - [Upgrade process overview \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)
- Perform pre-upgrade steps. Read the following article on TechNet:
 - [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)



Important:

You perform these steps on your temporary Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm.

Prepare your farms

In this step, you follow the pre-upgrade steps on your existing farm, create your temporary farm for the upgrade to Office SharePoint Server 2007, and create your destination SharePoint Server 2010 farm. Use the following steps and related content when preparing your farm for the upgrades.

Create the temporary Office SharePoint Server 2007 farm

In a virtual or physical environment, create a temporary small farm that is running Office SharePoint Server 2007 with Service Pack 2 (SP2) and the October 2009 Cumulative Update. You will use this farm to upgrade your content to Office SharePoint Server 2007 on the way to SharePoint Server 2010.



Tip:

For best results, it is recommended that you apply the latest updates to the environment. The October 2009 Cumulative Update includes changes to the pre-upgrade checker that can help identify issues before upgrade. For a list of available updates, see [Update Center for Microsoft Office, Office Servers, and Related Products](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=181115) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=181115>). For more information about applying updates, see [Updates Resource Center for SharePoint Products and Technologies](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=181116) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=181116>).

1. Download the software for the temporary farm.

You can use the trial version of Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 in this temporary environment if you do not have a license agreement for the full product. The trial version can be used for 180 days.

Download the trial version at one of the following links:

- x86 version: [Download details: SharePoint Server 2007 Trial Version](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=120683) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=120683>)
- x64 version: [Download details: SharePoint Server 2007 Trial Version \(x64\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=120684) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=120684>)

-
2. Install any language template packs needed for your sites. For more information, see [Install available language template packs \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188590&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188590&clcid=0x409>).
 3. Configure the farm by using the appropriate farm settings for your environment and reapplying all of the customizations needed by your content. Make sure that you deploy the customizations and the upgrade definition files needed for any custom site definitions that might exist in your environment. You must create Web applications on the temporary farm for every virtual server that you had in your original farm. The URL for the new Web applications should match either the source farm URLs or the destination farm URLs, otherwise you risk adding references to additional temporary URLs to the content. Ideally, you should use the same URLs for the source farm and destination farm, so that the temporary farm URLs are exactly the same as well, including the port numbers used.

For more information about configuring the farm, see [Prepare the new Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 environment](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188593&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188593&clcid=0x409>). For more information about deploying custom site definitions and upgrade definitions, see [Deploy upgrade definition files and new site definitions \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188595&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=188595&clcid=0x409>).

Set up your full SharePoint Server 2010 farm

This is the farm you will use for your production environment eventually, so make sure that you plan your infrastructure appropriately to support the solution you are hosting. For more information about how to plan your server farm, see [Plan for server farms and environments \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/fd081152-5fdd-4e47-9afb-c887fb1ce22(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/fd081152-5fdd-4e47-9afb-c887fb1ce22\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/fd081152-5fdd-4e47-9afb-c887fb1ce22(Office.14).aspx)).

1. Create your farm on 64-bit hardware with database servers that are running a 64-bit version of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 with Service Pack 1 (SP1) and Cumulative Update 2. For more information, see [Multiple servers for a three-tier farm \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4982a861-ad5c-43e4-a49f-958afd4370aa(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4982a861-ad5c-43e4-a49f-958afd4370aa\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4982a861-ad5c-43e4-a49f-958afd4370aa(Office.14).aspx)).
2. Install any language template packs needed for your sites. For more information, see [Install available language template packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
3. Configure the farm by using the appropriate farm settings for your environment and reapplying all of the customizations needed by your content. Again, you must create Web applications on the destination farm for every virtual server that you had in your original farm.

For more information about how to create and configure a server farm for a database attach upgrade, see [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#).

Perform the first upgrade

With your farms set up and configured, you are ready to upgrade your content databases to Office SharePoint Server 2007.

 **Important:**

Make sure that you have run the pre-upgrade scan tool on your original farm before you detach the databases. The upgrade process will not run if you have not scanned the databases. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade scan tool \(Office SharePoint Server\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262231(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262231\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262231(Office.12).aspx)).

To perform a database attach upgrade (called database migration for this version), follow these steps:

1. Back up the content databases.
Content databases are any databases that use the suffix "_site".
2. Restore the backed-up copies to your temporary farm.
3. Add the databases to the Web applications to start the upgrade process.

For complete information and steps to follow, see [Migrate databases](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=116076&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=116076&clcid=0x409>).

After upgrade, you also need to import the profile information. For more information, see the section "User profiles: start a full import" in [Perform post-upgrade steps for an in-place upgrade](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188592&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=188592&clcid=0x409>).

Verify the first upgrade

To verify the upgrade, do the following:

- Review the upgrade log file. For more information, see [Migrate databases](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=116076&clcid=0x409) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=116076&clcid=0x409>).
- Review the upgraded sites to make sure that they still work as expected and that your Web Parts and other custom elements work correctly.

Perform the second upgrade

After you have verified that your sites work correctly, you can begin the upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010.

Important:

Run the pre-upgrade checker and review the report so that you can address any potential issues on your temporary farm before you upgrade the content. For more information, see [Run the pre-upgrade checker \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

To perform the database attach upgrade, follow these steps:

1. Back up the content databases.
2. Restore the backed-up copies to your destination farm.
3. Add the databases to the Web applications to start the upgrade process. In SharePoint Server 2010, you can attach databases in parallel to speed up the upgrade process.

For complete information and steps to follow, see [Attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#).

Verify the second upgrade

To verify the upgrade, do the following:

- Review the upgrade log file.
- Review the upgraded sites to make sure that they still work as expected and that your Web Parts and other custom elements work correctly.

For more information, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

Upgrade from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010

If you are running Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010 and have decided that you need the functionality of Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010, you can upgrade from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010. You can upgrade by using either the in-place or database attach upgrade approaches. To upgrade in place, you install SharePoint Server 2010 over SharePoint Foundation 2010 and then perform the additional configurations that SharePoint Server 2010 requires. To upgrade by using the database attach upgrade approach, you create a separate environment to run SharePoint Server 2010. Then you copy the content databases to that environment, attach the databases, and upgrade the data.

In this article:

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Upgrade in place from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
- [Attach databases and upgrade from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010](#)
- [Enable new features on existing sites and subsites](#)

We recommend that you perform a trial upgrade on a test environment before you upgrade the production environment. For more information, see [Use a trial upgrade to find potential issues \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#). Before you begin, make sure that you back up the whole environment, including any custom templates, features, or solutions that you are using. For more information, see [Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Foundation 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2a005b70-2f53-42a1-89e0-f907a8e98623\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2a005b70-2f53-42a1-89e0-f907a8e98623(Office.14).aspx)). You should also communicate with the users before you make this change so that they can be aware of how their sites will change and how long their sites might be unavailable while you perform these steps. For more information, see [Create a communication plan \(SharePoint Foundation 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/f88e5a60-5465-46f3-bce6-dba39c5f573\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/f88e5a60-5465-46f3-bce6-dba39c5f573(Office.14).aspx)).

Because SharePoint Server 2010 has many more capabilities and features than SharePoint Foundation 2010, you should spend some time planning which capabilities you want to take advantage of in your current sites; which new sites you want to create; and how to keep the new environment available, secure, and performing well. For more information, see [Planning and architecture for SharePoint Server 2010](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0ed0b44c-d60d-4b85-87de-19065d968835\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/0ed0b44c-d60d-4b85-87de-19065d968835(Office.14).aspx)).

Before you begin

Before you begin the upgrade, review the following information about permissions, hardware requirements, software requirements, and steps to perform before you begin the process.

-
- Ensure that you have met all hardware and software requirements. You must have a 64-bit version of Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2. For server farms, you must also have a 64-bit version of SQL Server 2005 or SQL Server 2008. For more information about these requirements (such as specific updates that you must install), see [Hardware and software requirements \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4d88c402-24f2-449b-86a6-6e7afcfec0cd(Office.14).aspx)).
 - Ensure that you are prepared to set up the required accounts by using appropriate permissions. For detailed information, see [Administrative and service accounts required for initial deployment \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/06765032-fedb-4b73-a019-f096b48cd2a8(Office.14).aspx)).
 - Ensure that the account that you use to run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard for an in-place upgrade, or to attach the databases for a database attach upgrade, is a member of the **db_owner** fixed database role for all the databases that you want to upgrade.
 - For a database attach upgrade, check for and repair any database consistency errors. For more information, see [Database maintenance for Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 \(white paper\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc307161(Office.12).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc307161\(Office.12\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc307161(Office.12).aspx)).

Upgrade in place from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010

To install and configure SharePoint Server 2010, you run Setup on all Web servers in the server farm. Then you install any language packs, and then run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard to begin upgrading the data. Then, you use the Farm Configuration Wizard to select the service applications that you want to use and enable the new features for existing sites.



Note:

If you are using the detach databases hybrid approach for upgrading, you should detach your content databases before you run Setup. For more information about how to detach databases, see [Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

We recommend that you back up the environment before you begin the upgrade process. For more information, see [Back up the entire environment before an in-place upgrade \(SharePoint Foundation 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2a005b70-2f53-42a1-89e0-f907a8e98623(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2a005b70-2f53-42a1-89e0-f907a8e98623\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/2a005b70-2f53-42a1-89e0-f907a8e98623(Office.14).aspx)).



Important:

If you are running an in-place upgrade on a server farm, disconnect all the users from the server farm by stopping the World Wide Web Publishing Service (W3SVC) on all Web servers. If you allow users in a server farm to connect after the files and databases have been upgraded on one Web server, but before the other Web servers have been upgraded, users will be unable to browse the Web sites.

To install SharePoint Server 2010

1. Run Setup.
2. On the Enter your Product Key page, type your product key, and then click **Continue**.
3. On the Read the Microsoft Software License Terms page, review the terms, select the **I accept the terms of this agreement** check box, and then click **Continue**.
4. On the Choose a file location page, click **Install Now**.
Setup runs and installs SharePoint Server 2010.
5. On the completion page, clear the **Run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard now** check box, and then click **Close**.

Before you run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard:

- Ensure that the account you use to run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard is a member of the **db_owner** fixed database role for all the databases that you want to upgrade. If it is not, you might see an error about an unknown user account when the wizard starts to upgrade the databases.
- Be sure that you have installed any language packs for SharePoint Server 2010. For more information, see [Install available language template packs \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).
- Be sure that you have updated all the servers in your farm with the same updates and service packs. If you have different levels of updates applied, you might see a message about missing updates.

If you are upgrading a single server, you can run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on only that server and start to upgrade content. If you are upgrading a server farm, first run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on the server that is running the SharePoint Central Administration Web site. Pause the wizard and run the wizard on the other servers in the farm, and then return to the first server to complete the wizard. It is important to upgrade Central Administration before you attempt to upgrade any other content in the farm, and completing the wizard on the server that is running Central Administration enables you to do so.

Caution:

After you run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, SharePoint Foundation 2010 will no longer be available. You cannot pause or roll back the setup and upgrade process. Be sure that you have a current and valid backup of your environment before you proceed with installation of SharePoint Server 2010.

▶ To run the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard

1. Click **Start**, point to **All Programs**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard**.
2. In the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard, on the Welcome to SharePoint Products page, click **Next**.
A message appears that notifies you that Internet Information Services (IIS), the SharePoint Administration Services v4, and the SharePoint Timer Service v4 may need to be restarted or reset during configuration.
3. Click **Yes**.
4. On the Completing the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard page, verify the settings, and then click **Next**.
The SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard runs and configures the configuration database and Central Administration for SharePoint Server 2010.
5. On the Configuration Successful page, review the settings that have been configured, and then click **Finish**.



Note:

If the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard fails, check the PSCDiagnostics log files and the upgrade log files, which are located on the drive on which SharePoint Server 2010 is installed, in the %COMMONPROGRAMFILES%\Microsoft Shared\Web Server Extensions\14\LOGS folder. For more information about viewing these log files, see [Verify upgrade status](#).

The SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard closes, and Central Administration opens on the Configure your SharePoint farm page.

In the next procedure, you use this page to configure your farm to have the service applications and services that you want to use.

6. If you are upgrading a server farm, you can now complete the SharePoint Products Configuration Wizard on the other servers in the farm.

▶ To run the Farm Configuration Wizard

1. On the Configure your SharePoint farm page, click **Start the Wizard**.
2. On the Configure your SharePoint farm page, in the **Services** section, select services that you want to use in the farm, and then click **Next**.



Note:

You cannot change the service account for your farm from this page.

Provisioning the services might take some time.

-
3. On the Create Site Collection page, click **Skip**.
 4. On the Configure your SharePoint farm page, review the summary of the farm configuration.



Note:

If you are following the detach databases hybrid approach for upgrade, you can now begin to attach content databases to upgrade them. For more information, see

[Roadmap for in-place upgrade with detached databases \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

5. Click **Close**.

The **Feature Pushdown** command lets you update all site collections by using the features that are available in SharePoint Server 2010. However, you might want to make these features available only in certain site collections. For information about how to control the features that you make available and the steps to enable the features for sites and subsites, see [Enable new features on existing sites and subsites](#), later in this article.

In a server farm environment, you might want some servers to act as application servers, such as an index server. SharePoint Foundation 2010 does not have the application server role. Therefore, all servers in your farm were originally front-end Web servers. When you ran Setup, you chose a server type (either **Complete** for an application server, or **Web Front End** for a Web server) for each server in the farm. For the application servers, you now must use Central Administration to configure the appropriate services for that server. For more information about how to manage services and change your farm topology, see [Service application and service management \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/56187c25-0444-4da7-9879-a141da864704\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/56187c25-0444-4da7-9879-a141da864704(Office.14).aspx)) and [Farm topology management \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/3cd153fa-638b-43ed-b8d3-857f678595b9\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/3cd153fa-638b-43ed-b8d3-857f678595b9(Office.14).aspx)).

You can monitor the upgrade process for each site from the Upgrade Status page in Central Administration or by using the **localupgradestatus** operation in the Stsadm command-line tool. For more information, see [Verify upgrade and review upgraded sites \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

After upgrade is completed successfully for all sites, if you stopped the World Wide Web Publishing Service (W3SVC) on all front-end Web servers before the upgrade, manually start the W3SVC on the front-end Web servers to make the Web servers available to users.

After you upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010, we recommend that you configure Search settings to crawl the content. For more information, see [Post-installation steps for search \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/c2fab560-bdc2-4093-a6a5-979dcda5bc4d\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/c2fab560-bdc2-4093-a6a5-979dcda5bc4d(Office.14).aspx)).

Attach databases and upgrade from SharePoint Foundation 2010 to SharePoint Server 2010

If you are changing hardware when you upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010, or if you want to move your SharePoint Foundation 2010 content into an existing SharePoint Server 2010 farm, you can perform a database attach upgrade. This section provides a guide to the steps that you must perform

for this type of upgrade. Further information for each step is available in the [Perform a database attach upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010](#) section of the Upgrade Guide.

To upgrade by using the database attach method, you perform the following steps:

1. Prepare the new environment.

You must set up your new environment before you can attach databases and upgrade to SharePoint Server 2010. Be sure to create new Web applications in the SharePoint Server 2010 environment for each Web application in the SharePoint Foundation 2010 environment. For more information, see [Prepare the new SharePoint Server 2010 environment for a database attach upgrade](#).

2. Back up the databases.

Create a backup of each database that you are going to attach. For more information, see [Back up the previous version databases by using SQL Server tools](#).

3. Detach the previous version databases, or create a copy of the databases.

You can either detach the databases from the SharePoint Foundation 2010 environment or upgrade a copy of the databases. For more information, see [Detach the previous version databases \(standard database attach\)](#) and [Restore a backup copy of the database \(database attach with read-only databases\)](#).

4. Verify custom components.

Before you attach the content databases to the Web applications, use the **Test-SPContentDatabase** Windows PowerShell cmdlet to verify that you have all the custom components that you must have for that database. For more information, see [Verify custom components](#).

5. Attach and upgrade the databases.

Attach the databases to upgrade them to SharePoint Server 2010. For more information, see [Attach a content database to a Web application](#).

6. Verify the sites.

After you upgrade the databases, check the upgrade status and verify the sites. For more information, see [Verification: Verify upgrade for the first database](#).

7. Enable new features.

After you upgrade, you can enable the new features for your site collections.

Enable new features on existing sites and subsites

After you assign services to servers and configure shared services, you can enable the newly installed SharePoint Server 2010 features for the existing site collections on the server farm. Any new sites that you create will automatically have these features. However, existing sites do not receive the new features until you enable them. You can select one of the following:

- Enable the new features for all site collections (all site collections get all of the new features).

-
- Enable only the features that you want, and enable them only for specific site collections and subsites.

To enable the SharePoint Server 2010 features for all existing sites in your server farm, use the following procedure. You perform this procedure only once to update all sites in your server farm.



Note:

The process for enabling features for all site collections uses a SharePoint Timer Service job and may take a long time to complete, depending on the number of sites in your server farm.

▶ **Enable SharePoint Server 2010 features on all existing sites**

1. In Central Administration, click **Upgrade and Migration**.
2. On the Upgrade and Migration page, click **Enable Features on Existing Sites**.
3. On the Enable features on existing sites page, select the **Enable all sites in this installation to use the following set of features** check box, and then click **OK**.

After you click **OK**, the Feature Enabling Status page opens. This page is periodically updated with current status.

If you do not want all site collections to have the full set of SharePoint Server 2010 features, you can enable just the features that you want for any specific site collection or subsite by using the Site Settings page for that site collection or subsite.



Note:

If you decide to enable features on a per-site basis, instead of on all existing site collections, you may have to start the features at the Web application level first. To activate features for a Web application, in Central Administration, on the Application Management page, click **Manage Web applications**. On the Web Application Management page, select the Web application that contains the sites, and then in the ribbon, click **Manage Features**. In the **Manage Web Application Features** dialog box, next to any features that you want that Web application to use, click **Activate**.

To enable specific features for a specific site collection, perform the following procedure.

▶ **Enable specific features for a specific site collection**

1. In the top-level site for the site collection, on the **Site Actions** menu, click **Site Settings**.
2. On the Site Settings page, in the **Site Collection Administration** section, click **Site collection features**.
3. On the Features page, next to any features that you want that site collection to use, click

Activate.

To enable specific features for a specific subsite, perform the following procedure.

▶ **Enable specific features for a specific subsite**

1. In the subsite, on the **Site Actions** menu, click **Site Settings**.
2. On the Site Settings page, in the **Site Actions** section, click **Site features**.
3. On the Features page, next to any features that you want that subsite to use, click **Activate**.

Upgrade from a SharePoint Server 2010 Standard CAL to an Enterprise CAL

This article provides information and procedures on how to upgrade from a Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 Standard client access license (CAL) to an Enterprise CAL.

In this article:

- [Process overview](#)
- [View the list of features that are included in each license type](#)
- [Enable Enterprise features on existing sites](#)
- [Verification](#)

Process overview

The same Setup program can install both the Standard and Enterprise editions of SharePoint Server 2010. It is the product key that you enter when you run Setup that determines which set of features is available for use. If you installed SharePoint Server 2010 by using a Standard CAL, and now want to convert the license type to the Enterprise CAL, you can enable and then push the Enterprise feature set to all sites in your server farm.

If you are unsure about upgrading and want to evaluate the different feature sets, we recommend that you configure a separate installation and deploy SharePoint Server 2010 Trial Version. To download the trial version, see [SharePoint Server 2010 Trial](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=196695) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=196695>).

Before you perform the following procedures, confirm that you have purchased the Enterprise CAL.

View the list of features that are included in each license type

Features that are available with the Standard license type include the following:

- Collaboration
- Enterprise content management
- Workflow
- My Site Web sites
- Profiles and personalization
- Enterprise search
- Business Data Catalog

Additional features that are available with the Enterprise license type include the following:

- Access Services
- Excel Services
- Visio Services
- Forms Services
- PerformancePoint Services

For a complete list of the features that are available in the two CALs, see [Compare SharePoint Editions](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=196571) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=196571>).

Enable Enterprise features on existing sites

To convert the license type to the Enterprise CAL, you enable the Enterprise features on the SharePoint Central Administration Web site. Any new sites that you create will automatically have these features. However, existing sites do not receive the Enterprise feature set until you perform the steps to enable the features on existing sites. You have to perform these procedures only one time to update all sites in the server farm.

This procedure uses a SharePoint 2010 Timer service and may take a long time to complete, depending on the number of sites in the server farm.

▶ To enable Enterprise features for the server farm

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To enable enterprise features, you must be a member of the Farm Administrators group on the computer that is running Central Administration.
2. On the Central Administration Web site, click **Upgrade and Migration**.
3. In the **Upgrade and Patch Management** section, click **Enable Enterprise Features**.
4. Enter the product key, and then click **OK**.

After you have enabled the features for the farm, you can enable the features on existing sites in the farm.

▶ To enable Enterprise features on existing sites by using Central Administration

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To enable enterprise features on existing sites, you must be a member of the Farm Administrators group on the computer that is running Central Administration.
2. On the Central Administration Web site, click **Upgrade and Migration**.
3. In the **Upgrade and Patch Management** section, click **Enable Features on Existing Sites**.
4. On the Enable Features on Existing Sites page, select the **Enable all sites in this installation to use the following set of features** check box, and then click **OK**.

▶ **To enable Enterprise features on existing sites by using Windows PowerShell**

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. At the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following command:

```
Enable-SPFeature [-Identity] <FeatureID> [-URL] <site URL>
```

Where:

- *<Identity>* specifies the name of the feature or GUID to install.
- *<URL>* specifies the URL of the Web application, site collection, or Web site for which the feature is being activated.

Example

```
Enable-SPFeature -Identity MyCustom -URL http://somesite
```

For more information, see [Enable-SPFeature](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9b68c192-b640-4cb8-8a92-a98008169b27(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9b68c192-b640-4cb8-8a92-a98008169b27\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/9b68c192-b640-4cb8-8a92-a98008169b27(Office.14).aspx)).



Note:

We recommend that you use Windows PowerShell when performing command-line administrative tasks. The Stsadm command-line tool has been deprecated, but is included to support compatibility with previous product versions.

Verification

Use the following procedure to verify that the enterprise features have been enabled on existing sites.

▶ **To verify that enterprise features are enabled on existing sites**

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To verify that enterprise features are enabled on existing sites, you must be a member of the Farm Administrators SharePoint group on the computer that is running Central Administration.
2. On the site collection Web site, on the **Site Actions** menu, click **Site Settings**.
3. On the Site Settings page, in the **Site Administration** section, click **Site features**.

In the **Status** column for **SharePoint Server Enterprise Site features**, ensure that **Active**

appears.

See Also

[Uninstall SharePoint Server 2010](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7ad523f5-db54-4169-81ba-3a7b60f218b7(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7ad523f5-db54-4169-81ba-3a7b60f218b7\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/7ad523f5-db54-4169-81ba-3a7b60f218b7(Office.14).aspx))

[Deploy a single server with a built-in database \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bd99c3a9-0333-4c1c-9793-a145769e48e6(Office.14).aspx)
([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bd99c3a9-0333-4c1c-9793-a145769e48e6\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/bd99c3a9-0333-4c1c-9793-a145769e48e6(Office.14).aspx))

[Deploy a single server with SQL Server \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/356d3a0b-fc26-455c-9afb-6d2ffdceef84(Office.14).aspx)
([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/356d3a0b-fc26-455c-9afb-6d2ffdceef84\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/356d3a0b-fc26-455c-9afb-6d2ffdceef84(Office.14).aspx))

[Multiple servers for a three-tier farm \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4982a861-ad5c-43e4-a49f-958afd4370aa(Office.14).aspx)
([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4982a861-ad5c-43e4-a49f-958afd4370aa\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/4982a861-ad5c-43e4-a49f-958afd4370aa(Office.14).aspx))

[How To: Detect the Installed SKU of SharePoint 2010](http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=199101) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=199101>)
(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=199101>)

Upgrade from a trial version of SharePoint Server 2010

This article provides information and a procedure on how to upgrade from a trial version of Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 to a full product edition.

In this article:

- [Process overview](#)
- [Upgrade from a trial version of SharePoint Server 2010](#)

Process overview

If you are using a trial version of SharePoint Server 2010 and want to upgrade to a licensed product edition, you can purchase a license and perform the upgrade on the SharePoint Central Administration Web site. For more information about purchasing a license, see [How to buy Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=196728>).

The following upgrade options of a trial version of SharePoint Server 2010 to a licensed product edition are available:

- Standard trial version to Standard licensed edition
- Standard trial version to Enterprise licensed edition
- Enterprise trial version to Enterprise licensed edition

Upgrade from a trial version of SharePoint Server 2010

After you have purchased a license to upgrade to the licensed edition of SharePoint Server 2010, you can use the Convert License Type page on the Central Administration Web site to enter the new product key.

Use the following procedure to convert a license type and enter the product key.

To convert a license type and enter the product key

1. Verify that you have the following administrative credentials:
 - To convert a license type, you must be a member of the Farm Administrators SharePoint group on the computer that is running Central Administration.
2. On the Central Administration Web site, in the **Upgrade and Migration** section, click **Convert farm license type**.
3. On the Convert License Type page, in the **Enter the Product Key** box, type the new product key and then click **OK**.

You can verify that you have the licensed product edition of SharePoint Server 2010 by going back to the Convert License Type page and making sure that the license type has changed.



Note:

If you upgraded from a Standard client access license (CAL) to an Enterprise CAL, you must enable the enterprise features on existing sites in your server farm. For more information, see [Upgrade from a SharePoint Server 2010 Standard CAL to an Enterprise CAL](#).

See Also

[Upgrade from a SharePoint Server 2010 Standard CAL to an Enterprise CAL](#)

[Upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

Using AAM URL redirection as part of the upgrade process (SharePoint Server 2010) (white paper)

This white paper describes the planning activities that you need to successfully deploy and use the alternate access mapping (AAM) URL redirection feature in Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 to help mitigate downtime during a server computer or server farm upgrade. It also describes the procedures necessary to successfully complete the configuration of this feature by modifying existing Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 server computers.



Important:

The process described in this white paper is an advanced technique for avoiding downtime during upgrade. It should only be used if other techniques, such as read-only databases and upgrade in-place with detached databases, would cause an unacceptably long period of downtime for your users. Do not consider using this technique unless you know your upgrade process will take more than a long weekend. If your upgrade is not likely to take that long, you won't save any time by performing the procedures in this paper. For more information about other approaches to upgrade, see [Determine upgrade approach \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#).

[Download this white paper as a Microsoft Word document \(.doc\).](#)

(<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=168857>)

[Download this white paper as a PDF file.](#) (<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=168858>)

Migrate from forms-based authentication to claims-based authentication (SharePoint Server 2010)

The procedures in this article provide guidance to help you migrate existing Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications, which were configured to use forms-based authentication, to work in a Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 environment as claims-based Web applications.

After upgrading to SharePoint Server 2010, upgraded Web applications retain the logon method that the Office SharePoint Server 2007 applications used. Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications that were configured to use Windows authentication require no additional steps for upgrade. However, you must convert Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications that were configured to use forms-based authentication to use claims-based authentication before the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications can be used in SharePoint Server 2010. After you convert the Office SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications to claims-based authentication, configure the Web application zones for forms-based authentication. The final step is to migrate users and permissions to SharePoint Server 2010. This article provides the following procedures to complete Web application migration:

- [Convert SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications that use forms-based authentication to use claims-based authentication](#)
- [Migrate users and permissions from SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010](#)

Convert SharePoint Server 2007 Web applications that use forms-based authentication to use claims-based authentication

Perform the steps in the following procedure to use Windows PowerShell to convert existing Web applications to claims-based authentication.

To convert Web applications to claims-based authentication

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](#) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. From the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following:

```
$w = Get-SPWebApplication "http://<server>/"
```

```
$w.UseClaimsAuthentication = 1
```

```
$w.Update()
```

```
$w.ProvisionGlobally()
```

**Note:**

We recommend that you use Windows PowerShell when performing command-line administrative tasks. The Stsadm command-line tool has been deprecated, but is included to support compatibility with previous product versions.

Migrate users and permissions from SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010

Perform the steps in the following procedure to use Windows PowerShell to migrate users and permissions.

▶ To migrate users and permissions from SharePoint Server 2007 to SharePoint Server 2010

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. From the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following:

```
$w = Get-SPWebApplication "http://<server>/"
```

```
$w.MigrateUsers(True)
```

**Note:**

We recommend that you use Windows PowerShell when performing command-line administrative tasks. The Stsadm command-line tool has been deprecated, but is included to support compatibility with previous product versions.

See Also

[Configure forms-based authentication for a claims-based Web application \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](#)

Migrate from classic-mode to claims-based authentication (SharePoint Server 2010)

The procedures in this article provide guidance to help you migrate existing Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 Web applications, which were configured to use classic-mode authentication, to use claims-based authentication. You might decide to do this if you want to implement an authentication method other than Windows authentication (for example, if you want to create a Web application that supports forms-based authentication). For more information, see [Plan authentication methods \(SharePoint Server 2010\)](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/40117fda-70a0-4e3d-8cd3-0def768da16c(Office.14).aspx) ([http://technet.microsoft.com/library/40117fda-70a0-4e3d-8cd3-0def768da16c\(Office.14\).aspx](http://technet.microsoft.com/library/40117fda-70a0-4e3d-8cd3-0def768da16c(Office.14).aspx)).



Warning:

After you migrate a Web application to claims-based authentication, you cannot revert it to classic-mode authentication.

Convert SharePoint Server 2010 Web applications that use classic-mode authentication to use claims-based authentication

Perform the steps in the following procedure to use Windows PowerShell to convert existing Web applications to claims-based authentication.

▶ To convert Web applications to claims-based authentication

1. Verify that you meet the following minimum requirements: See [Add-SPShellAdmin](http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx) (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff607596.aspx>).
2. On the **Start** menu, click **All Programs**.
3. Click **Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Products**.
4. Click **SharePoint 2010 Management Shell**.
5. From the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following:

```
$WebAppName = "http:// yourWebAppUrl"
```

```
$account = "yourDomain\yourUser"
```

```
$wa = get-SPWebApplication $WebAppName
```

```
Set-SPwebApplication $wa -AuthenticationProvider (New-SPAuthenticationProvider) -  
Zone Default
```

-
6. At the **Migration** prompt, click **Yes** to continue.
 7. From the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following to set the user as an administrator for the site:

```
$wa = get-SPWebApplication $WebAppName  
  
$account = (New-SPClaimsPrincipal -identity $account -identitytype  
1).ToEncodedString()
```

8. From the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following to configure the policy to enable the user to have full access:

```
$zp = $wa.ZonePolicies("Default")  
  
$p = $zp.Add($account, "PSPolicy")  
  
$fc=$wa.PolicyRoles.GetSpecialRole("FullControl")  
  
$p.PolicyRoleBindings.Add($fc)  
  
$wa.Update()
```

9. From the Windows PowerShell command prompt, type the following to perform user migration:

```
$wa = get-SPWebApplication $WebAppName  
  
$wa.MigrateUsers($true)
```

**Note:**

We recommend that you use Windows PowerShell when performing command-line administrative tasks. The Stsadm command-line tool has been deprecated, but is included to support compatibility with previous product versions.

Additional migration guidelines

After you perform the steps in the previous procedures, you might experience one or more of the following issues.

- Users who submit valid credentials might be notified that they do not have permissions. If this occurs, the `portalsuperuseraccount` property and the `portalsuperreaderaccount` property of the Web application were probably configured prior to migration. If this is the case, you must update the `portalsuperuseraccount` property and the `portalsuperreaderaccount` property to use the new claims-based account name. After migration, you can find the new claims-based account name in the Web application policy for the migrated Web application.
- If existing alerts are not invoked after migration, you might have to delete and recreate the alerts.
- If Search crawl does not function after migration, make sure the Search crawl account lists the new converted account name. If the new converted account name is not listed, you must manually create a new policy for the crawl account.